

Portuguese

An Essential Grammar
Second Edition

Amélia P. Hutchinson and Janet Lloyd

● ● ● ● ● ○ ESSENTIAL GRAMMARS

**Also available as a printed book
see title verso for ISBN details**

Portuguese

An Essential Grammar

Second Edition

This new edition of *Portuguese: An Essential Grammar* is a practical reference guide to the most important aspects of modern Portuguese.

It presents a fresh and accessible description of the language that combines traditional and function-based grammar. The book sets out the complexities of Portuguese in short, readable sections. Explanations are clear and free from jargon. Throughout, the emphasis is on Portuguese as used by native speakers around the world.

The *Grammar* is the ideal reference source for the learner and user of Portuguese. It is suitable for either independent study or for students in schools, colleges, universities and adult classes of all types.

This second edition features:

- Coverage of both European and Brazilian Portuguese and information on the lexical differences between the two
- Detailed contents list and index for easy access to information
- Full use of authentic examples
- Coverage of traditional grammar and language functions
- New section on the history and culture of the Portuguese-speaking world

Amélia P. Hutchinson is Supervisor for Portuguese Language at the University of Georgia and **Janet Lloyd** is Lecturer in Portuguese and Spanish at the University of Salford.

Routledge Essential Grammars

Essential Grammars are available for the following languages:

Chinese
Danish
Dutch
English
Finnish
Modern Hebrew
Norwegian
Polish
Portuguese
Swedish
Urdu

Other titles of related interest published by Routledge:

Colloquial Portuguese
By João Sampaio and Barbara McIntyre

Colloquial Portuguese of Brazil
By Esmenia Simões Osborne, João Sampaio and Barbara McIntyre

Portuguese

An Essential Grammar

Second Edition

 **Amélia P. Hutchinson and
Janet Lloyd**

First edition published 1996
by Routledge
29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

Simultaneously published in the UK
by Routledge
11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Reprinted 1997, 1999, 2000, 2002

Second edition published 2003 by Routledge

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group

© 2003 Amélia P. Hutchinson and Janet Lloyd

This edition published in the Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2006.

"To purchase your own copy of this or any of Taylor & Francis or Routledge's collection of thousands of eBooks please go to www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk."

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Hutchinson, Amélia P., 1949–

Portuguese: an essential grammar/Amélia P. Hutchinson and Janet Lloyd. – 2nd ed.

p. cm. – (Routledge essential grammars)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

I. Portuguese language – Grammar. 2. Portuguese language – Textbooks for foreign speakers – English. I. Lloyd, Janet, 1968–
II. Title. III. Series.

PC5067.3.H88 2003

469.82'421–dc21

2003005266

ISBN 0-203-42656-8 Master e-book ISBN

ISBN 0-203-44077-3 (Adobe eReader Format)

ISBN 0-415-30816-X (hbk) (Print Edition)

Contents

Foreword to first edition	xiv
Acknowledgments	xvi
Foreword to second edition	xviii
How to use this book	xx

PART I: AN ESSENTIAL GRAMMAR **I**

Chapter 1 Pronunciation and spelling **3**

1.1	Vowels	3
1.2	Consonants	4
1.3	Diphthongs	6
1.4	Stress	7
1.5	Accents	8

Chapter 2 Nouns **9**

2.1	Gender I: masculine and feminine	9
2.2	Gender II: forming the feminine	11
2.3	Number: forming the plural	15
2.4	Diminutives and augmentatives	18
2.5	Compound nouns	21
2.6	Collective nouns	22

Chapter 3 Articles **24**

3.1	Definite article	24
3.2	Use of the definite article	24
3.3	Omission of the definite article	25
3.4	Contraction of the definite article	27

3.5	Indefinite article	28
3.6	Use of the indefinite article	29
3.7	Omission of the indefinite article	30
3.8	Contraction of the indefinite article	30
Chapter 4 Adjectives		32
4.1	Gender	32
4.2	Number	34
4.3	Degree	36
4.4	Agreement	40
4.5	Position in the sentence	41
Chapter 5 Pronouns		43
5.1	Personal pronouns	43
5.2	Possessive pronouns and adjectives	53
5.3	Demonstrative pronouns	55
5.4	Relative pronouns	57
5.5	Interrogative pronouns	60
5.6	Indefinite pronouns and adjectives	62
Chapter 6 Numerals		64
6.1	Cardinal, ordinal and multiplicative numbers	64
6.2	Collective numerals	66
6.3	Use of the conjunction <i>e</i> with numerals	66
6.4	Roman numerals	67
Chapter 7 Verbs		68
7.1	Moods and tenses	68
7.2	Indicative mood	69
7.3	Subjunctive mood	82
7.4	Imperative mood	90
7.5	Infinitive	91
7.6	Present participle	93
7.7	Compound infinitive and compound present participle	94
7.8	Past participle	94
7.9	Passive voice	95

7.10	Auxiliary verbs	98
7.11	Impersonal, unipersonal and defective verbs	103
7.12	Reflexive verbs	104
7.13	Changing vowel sounds in verbal conjugation	106
Chapter 8 Adverbs		107
8.1	Uses of the adverb	107
8.2	Adverbs in <i>-mente</i>	108
8.3	Other adverbs	109
8.4	Position	109
8.5	Degree	110
Chapter 9 Conjunctions		111
9.1	Co-ordinating conjunctions	111
9.2	Subordinating conjunctions	113
Chapter 10 Prepositions		116
10.1	Most commonly used prepositions	116
10.2	Prepositional phrases	116
10.3	Contraction of preposition + article or pronoun	117
10.4	Verbs followed by a preposition	117
Chapter 11 Additional notes on Portuguese usage		119
11.1	<i>Gente/a gente</i>	119
11.2	<i>Tudo/todo</i>	119
11.3	<i>Por/para</i>	120
11.4	<i>A/para</i>	121
11.5	<i>Desde ... até/de ... a</i>	121
11.6	<i>Próximo/seguinte</i>	122
11.7	<i>Tão/tanto</i>	122
11.8	Affirmative/negative	123
11.9	<i>Ainda/já</i>	123
11.10	Prepositions of time	124
11.11	Prepositions with means of transport	124
11.12	Word order	125
11.13	<i>Ser/estar</i>	128

PART II: LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS	131
Chapter 12 Socializing	133
12.1 General greetings	133
12.2 Taking leave	134
12.3 Greeting/taking leave according to time of day	135
12.4 Attracting attention	136
12.5 Seasonal greetings	138
12.6 Personal greetings	138
12.7 Congratulations	138
12.8 Good wishes	139
12.9 Introductions	139
12.10 Forms of address	140
12.11 Talking about one's health	144
12.12 Places and locations	146
12.13 Talking about the weather	148
Chapter 13 Exchanging factual information	151
13.1 Identifying people	151
13.2 Identifying things	154
13.3 Asking for information	155
13.4 Reporting, describing and narrating	157
13.5 Letter writing	160
13.6 Correcting assumptions	163
Chapter 14 Getting things done	165
14.1 Suggesting a course of action	165
14.2 Offering to do something	166
14.3 Requesting others to do something	166
14.4 Inviting others to do something	167
14.5 Asking for and giving advice	167
14.6 Warning others	168
14.7 Instructing others to do/not to do something	169
14.8 Requesting assistance	170
14.9 Stating and finding out whether something is compulsory	171
14.10 Seeking, giving, refusing permission	172

14.11	Expressing and finding out about need	172
14.12	Enquiring and expressing intention, want or desire	173

Chapter 15 Finding out and expressing intellectual attitudes 175

15.1	Agreement and disagreement	175
15.2	Knowing something or someone	177
15.3	Remembering something or someone	178
15.4	Possibility and impossibility	179
15.5	Logical conclusions	181
15.6	Incomprehension and clarification	182
15.7	Certainty and uncertainty	183

Chapter 16 Judgement and evaluation 185

16.1	Expressing pleasure or liking	185
16.2	Expressing displeasure or dislike	186
16.3	Enquiring about pleasure/displeasure, liking/dislike	187
16.4	Enquiring about and expressing interest/lack of interest	188
16.5	Expressing surprise	189
16.6	Expressing hope	190
16.7	Enquiring about and expressing satisfaction/dissatisfaction	191
16.8	Expressing disappointment	192
16.9	Enquiring about and expressing worry or fear	192
16.10	Enquiring about and expressing preference	194
16.11	Expressing gratitude	194
16.12	Expressing sympathy	195
16.13	Expressing happiness and unhappiness	196
16.14	Apologizing	196
16.15	Enquiring about and expressing approval/disapproval	197
16.16	Expressing appreciation	198
16.17	Expressing regret	199
16.18	Expressing indifference	200
16.19	Accusing	200
16.20	Enquiring about and expressing capability/incapability	201

PART III: BRAZILIAN VARIANTS	203
Chapter 17 Brazilian essential grammar and language functions	205
Chapter B1 Pronunciation and spelling	206
B1.1 Vowels	208
B1.1.1 Oral vowels	208
B1.2 Consonants	209
B1.3 Diphthongs	209
B1.3.2 Nasal diphthongs	209
Chapter B2 Nouns	210
B2.4 Diminutives and augmentatives	210
B2.4.1 Diminutives	210
B2.4.3 Preferred diminutives	210
Chapter B3 Articles	211
B3.2 Use of the definite article	211
B3.2.1 With first names	211
B3.2.2 With titles	211
B3.2.5 Before possessive adjectives	211
Chapter B4 Adjectives	212
B4.1.1.2 Adjectives ending in -eu	212
B4.3 Degree	212
B4.3.1 The comparative	212
B4.3.3 Special comparative and superlative forms	212
Chapter B5 Pronouns	213
B5.1 Personal pronouns	213
B5.1.1 Subject pronouns	213
B5.1.2 Direct object pronouns	213
B5.1.3 Indirect object pronouns	215
B5.1.5 Prepositional pronouns	215
B5.1.6 Reflexive pronouns	216

B5.2	Possessive pronouns and adjectives	216
B5.2.1	Possessive adjectives	217
B5.2.2	Possessive pronouns	217
Chapter B6	Numerals	218
B6.1	Cardinal, ordinal and multiplicative numbers	218
Chapter B7	Verbs	219
B7.4	Imperative mood	219
B7.4.1	Conjugation	219
B7.6	Present participle	219
B7.12	Reflexive verbs	219
Chapter B10	Prepositions	221
B10.4	Verbs followed by a preposition	221
Chapter B11	Additional notes on Brazilian Portuguese usage	222
B11.1	Gente/a gente	222
B11.4	A/para	222
B11.11	Prepositions with means of transport	222
B11.12	Word order	223
B11.12.1	Pronouns and verbs	223
B11.12.5	Adverbs	223
Chapter B12	Socializing	224
B12.1	General greetings	224
B12.1.1	Informal	224
B12.2	Taking leave	224
B12.2.1	Informal	224
B12.2.2	More formal farewells, figurative	225
B12.4	Attracting attention	225
B12.4.3	Call for help	225
B12.10	Forms of address	225
B12.10.2	Less informal	226
B12.10.3	Formal	227

B12.10.4	Titles	227
B12.10.5	Family	228
B12.11	Talking about one's health	228
B12.11.1	In small talk and greetings	228
B12.12.4	Place of residence and addresses	229
B12.13	Talking about the weather	229

Chapter B13 Exchanging factual information 230

B13.1	Identifying people	230
B13.1.4	Profession, occupation	230
B13.3	Asking for information	230
B13.5	Letter writing	231
B13.5.1	Dates	231
B13.5.2	Opening formulas	231

Chapter B14 Getting things done 232

B14.4	Inviting others to do something	232
B14.8	Requesting assistance	232
B14.12	Enquiring about and expressing intention, want or desire	233

Chapter B15 Finding out about and expressing intellectual attitudes 234

B15.6	Incomprehension and clarification	234
B15.7	Certainty and uncertainty	234

Chapter B16 Judgement and evaluation 235

B16.2	Expressing displeasure or dislike	235
B16.5	Expressing surprise	235
B16.6	Expressing hope	235
B16.14	Apologizing	236
B16.17	Expressing regret	236

PART IV: HISTORICAL AND CULTURAL NOTES 237

Chapter 18 The Portuguese language and the cultures of the Portuguese-speaking world 239

18.1	Portuguese: an international language	239
18.1.1	Portuguese as an official language	239
18.1.2	Variants of Portuguese	240
18.2	The origins of Portuguese	241
18.3	Portuguese: cultural expressions	243
18.3.1	Literature	243
18.3.2	Music	244
18.3.3	Cinema	248
18.4	Internet resources	251

Bibliography 253

Index 255

Foreword to the first edition

The aim of this work is to offer the student of Portuguese a succinct and reasonably comprehensive overview of Portuguese grammar.

We have attempted to cater for different groups of students, each with their own needs: the beginner, who may not have an extensive knowledge of grammatical concepts and terminology yet requires a guide through the grammar of the language; the intermediate–advanced student, who appreciates a clear reference book in moments of doubt; and the independent or adult learner, who is studying Portuguese not for academic purposes but with other aims in mind, such as business or travel.

Above all, we have aimed to produce a ‘user-friendly’ handbook with concise explanations of areas of grammar and comprehensible examples taken from current Portuguese usage. This latter point is significant, given our firm belief that grammar should not stand divorced from usage. Nevertheless, the ‘essential’ nature of this work means that we have been obliged to use short illustrative phrases or sentences out of context.

We have tried to make the book as ‘neutral’ as possible, bearing in mind the differences between European Portuguese, Brazilian Portuguese and the Portuguese spoken in the Lusophone African countries. Although we have taken European Portuguese as our starting-point, we have indicated the most marked differences between this and Brazilian grammar and usage in Part III. We have aimed, thus, to cover both ends of the spectrum. As African Portuguese falls somewhere between these two extremes with divergences which are more lexical than grammatical, we have decided not to extend this work into that area.

Part II which deals with language functions was largely inspired by National Curriculum guidelines for other languages. In this way, we have also endeavoured to address the needs of teachers of Portuguese in secondary education.

If, with this product of our effort, we can assist a wider range of people in learning and developing their knowledge of Portuguese, the eighth most spoken language in the world, we will consider ourselves well rewarded.

Foreword
to the
first edition

Acknowledgements

We are grateful to many colleagues for their advice and assistance (and, in some cases, patience) in the writing of this book. Our sincere thanks go to members of the Spanish and Portuguese section of the Department of Modern Languages, University of Salford, and especially to Professor Leo Hickey, for his observations, which helped us to avoid many glaring mistakes; to Mr Malcolm Marsh for his advice on how to illustrate pronunciation and to Ms Cristina Sousa, for her helpful comments regarding language functions. We would also like to single out Mr Mike Harland of the University of Glasgow for his very welcome encouragement and Mr Carlos Sachs of the University of Manchester for his advice on Brazilian Portuguese usage.

Our thanks also go to Mr Peter Bull of William Hulme's Grammar School, Manchester, and Mr Neville Mars of St Edward's College, Liverpool for their support in this venture. Likewise, we are also grateful to Dr John Rae, Director of the Enterprise in Higher Education Unit of the University of Salford, and Mr Andrew Hollis of the Department of Modern Languages, University of Salford.

Many more people, British students of Portuguese and Portuguese post-graduate students of the University of Salford, offered their kind and enthusiastic support in the form of suggested examples or spontaneous comments frequently elicited by our dynamic collaborator, Maria José Azevedo Silva, whose role was of intrinsic value during the earlier stages of this project, the work having been initiated by Rute Franco Camacho.

Obviously, we could not overlook the contribution of our students, who, over the years, have offered themselves as guinea pigs and their comments have always been most welcome.

Despite the care that has gone into producing this book, there are, no doubt, errors, oversights and inaccuracies for which we take full responsibility.

Amélia P. Hutchinson
Janet Lloyd
Salford, 1996

Acknowledgements

Foreword to the second edition

The authors would like to express their pleasure at the success that this practical book has enjoyed in many universities, mainly in the UK and the USA, where it has been integrated into the syllabus of Portuguese language courses. We are most grateful for the comments and advice offered by colleagues for whom our volume has become a useful teaching-and-learning tool. In order not to outdate notes and handouts already prepared by teachers of Portuguese, we have not altered the numbering of sections although new items have been added.

We have thoroughly revised all the examples used in the various sections of the book and attempted to make them all acceptable in Brazilian and European Portuguese, in order to facilitate their use by readers interested in any of the variants of Portuguese. Whenever necessary, we added notes specific to Brazilian Portuguese in Part III. Our objective is to lead the reader or new learner to develop a 'mid-Atlantic' command of Portuguese that can be used anywhere in the Portuguese-speaking world. Any speaker can have control over the variant of Portuguese that he/she wishes to use, but that control cannot be exercised over their interlocutors, hence the need to be prepared to meet the challenges posed by speakers from all corners of the Portuguese diaspora. We have also improved the translation of many examples.

We have added Part IV, which contains cultural notes on the origins of Portuguese, its role as an international language, and its use in forms of artistic expression such as literature, music and film. These notes are far from being extensive. Their objective is merely to offer the reader a taster of Portuguese as a living language, and an instrument of linguistic and artistic communication for nearly two hundred million native speakers scattered around the world. In all other regards, our objectives are the same as stated in the first edition.

For this second revised edition, the authors have benefited from the assistance of Viviane Martines Riitano, a native speaker of Brazilian Portuguese who made a valuable contribution towards the thorough revision of this volume, and the section on *Música Popular Brasileira* or MPB, in Part IV.

Our logistics have become considerably complicated since our first edition. Janet Lloyd is still working at the University of Salford, UK, where she is Director of Undergraduate Studies in the School of Languages. Viviane Riitano teaches Portuguese at the University of Birmingham, UK, and Amélia P. Hutchinson is now Supervisor for Portuguese Language at the University of Georgia, Athens, GA, USA. It was only the team spirit that we all share and the progress of technology that made our work possible. Finally, a word of thanks to Sophie Oliver, our editor, for her enthusiasm, patience and understanding, giving a large publishing house like Routledge a human dimension that made our work a pleasure to accomplish.

Amélia P. Hutchinson
Janet Lloyd
19 January 2003

How to use this book

Part I covers the fundamental aspects of Portuguese grammar and is intended for reference and illustrative use.

Part II covers a wide range of language functions to assist students in putting grammar into context. In this part, our aim was to present a series of short, self-contained dialogues which not only illustrate language functions but also provide the student and the teacher with useful source texts. The dialogues may be developed in a number of ways, of which we suggest:

- (a) role-play;
- (b) a starting-point for development of narrative skills;
- (c) grammatical analysis;
- (d) comprehension exercises.

As we have tried as far as possible to use everyday Portuguese situations in the dialogues, we hope that they may also provide useful cultural references.

Part III presents the main variants of Brazilian Portuguese. Entries in this section carry the prefix 'B' and correspond to chapter and section numbers in Parts I and II. In these parts, superscript capital ^B indicates a Brazilian variant which can be found in Part III.

Most words in the Index are grammatically classified and it is intended as a learning tool. We hope that students who regularly consult the Index will gradually become accustomed to certain grammatical terms, thus finding that explanations in the book become progressively clearer.

PART I

An essential grammar

Pronunciation and spelling

This chapter offers a pronunciation guide to European Portuguese with examples of similar sounds in English. Wherever possible, we have attempted to provide close equivalent sounds in English but where this has proved impossible, we offer approximate equivalents.

1.1 Vowels

1.1.1 Oral vowels

	<i>Example</i>	<i>Pronounced as</i>
a open a	sap<u>a</u>to	fat
closed a	sap<u>a</u>to	about
unstressed a	bo<u>a</u>	announce
e open e	che<u>e</u>que	cheque
closed e	cabe<u>e</u>lo	fill
unstressed e ^B	che<u>e</u>que	bake
as conjunction, or	e	eel
as first syllable of word ^B	ele<u>e</u>fante	
i	fi<u>i</u>ta	feet
o^B open o	lo<u>o</u>ja	lozenge
closed o	po<u>o</u>ço	torso
unstressed o	po<u>o</u>ço	zoo (approximate)
u¹	lu<u>u</u>ta	loot

¹ The u is silent in que, qui, gue and gui (quente, quinta, guerra, guitarra) and pronounced in qua, quo and gua (quatro, quorum, guarda).

But there are some exceptions where the u is read: tranquilo, (tranqüilo^B in Brazilian Portuguese).

Note: An acute accent over a vowel means that it is ‘open’ (e.g. **lá**, **pé**, **avó**), whereas a circumflex accent means that the vowel is ‘closed’ (e.g. **lê**, **avô**).

1.1.2 Nasal vowels (produced with some nasal resonance)

A vowel is nasal if a *tilde* (~) is written above it or if it is followed by **-m** or **-n** within the same syllable:

	<i>Example</i>	<i>Pronounced as</i>
ã	lã	lamb
am	<u>am</u>pl o	ample
an	pl<u>an</u>ta	plankton
em	<u>em</u>préstimo	empower
en	<u>en</u>tre	entertain
om	<u>om</u>pras	competition
on	<u>on</u>tar	contrary
im	<u>im</u>	scene
in	<u>in</u>ta	tinder
um	<u>um</u>ba	} tomb
un	<u>un</u>ca	

The word **muíto** has a unique pronunciation because the **i** is pronounced as a nasal vowel.

1.2 Consonants^B

Most Portuguese consonants are pronounced in the same way as their English equivalents, except for:

	<i>Example</i>	<i>Pronounced as</i>
ç¹	la<u>ç</u>o	lace
ch	<u>ch</u>ampô	shampoo
g + a, o, u²	<u>g</u>ás	gash

g + e, i	<u>g</u>elo	measure
h	<u>h</u>ora	(not pronounced)
j	<u>j</u>á	measure
lh	mil<u>h</u>ão	million
nh	vin<u>h</u>o	onion
q³	<u>q</u>adro	quack

¹ c is pronounced as in ‘lace’ before e and i, and as in ‘cat’ before a, o and u. To be pronounced as in ‘lace’ before a, o and u, it must have a cedilla: ç.
² u after g is silent, when followed by e or i (e.g. *guitarra, guerra*).
³ q appears only before u. Normally, the u is silent if e or i follow (e.g. *máquina*).

r

intervocalic or final, or preceded by a consonant (except n or l)	<u>par</u>ar	(rolling the ‘r’ a little more than in English)
	com<u>pr</u>as	
initial, or preceded by n or l	<u>r</u>abo	robber (rolling the ‘r’)
	ten<u>r</u>o	
	pal<u>r</u>ar	
rr	<u>car</u>ro	(as initial ‘r’)

s

initial	<u>s</u>amba	samba
intervocalic, or final if followed by vowel	ca<u>s</u>a	} kasbah
	meu<u>s</u> amigos	
at end of syllable/word, if followed by unvoiced consonant (t, c, f, p)	ves<u>p</u>a	} sugar
	mo<u>s</u>ca	
	fó<u>s</u>foros	
	meu<u>s</u> pais	
at end of syllable/word, if followed by voiced consonant (b, d, g, m, n, r)	Li<u>s</u>boa	} measure
	há<u>s</u>-de	
	ra<u>s</u>gar	
	me<u>s</u>mo	
	ci<u>s</u>ne	
	Is<u>r</u>ael	
	a<u>s</u> mãos	

x

usual pronunciation

xerife sheriff
México mesh
 pexe fish
 excelente geisha

in words beginning with **ex-**
plus vowel

exame }
 existir } easy
 exótico }

in a few words (memorize!)

taxi taxi
 tórax thorax

in still fewer words (memorize!)

trouxe }
 próximo } possible

z

initial, or intervocalic

zebra zebra
 dizer dessert

final

luz louche

1.3 Diphthongs

1.3.1 Oral diphthongs

	<i>Example</i>	<i>Pronounced as</i>
ai	pa<u>i</u>	pie
au	ma<u>u</u>	power
ei ¹	le<u>i</u>	lay
eu ¹	te<u>u</u>	phew (approximate)
iu	part<u>iu</u>	Europe
oi ¹	fo<u>i</u>	'oy!'
ou	so<u>u</u>	though
ui	f<u>ui</u>	Louisiana (with more emphasis on the 'u')

¹ When these diphthongs carry an acute accent, the first vowel is pronounced with its equivalent open sound (see 1.1.1), e.g. papeís, chapeú, sóis.

1.3.2 Nasal diphthongs^B

When pronouncing the examples below, it is important to remember that the 'n' in the corresponding English words is not sounded. Imagine saying the words when you have a blocked nose and you will be close!

	<i>Example</i>	<i>Pronounced as</i>
ãe	m<u>ãe</u>	main (approx.)
ãi	c<u>ã</u>ibra	Cain (approx.)
ão	p<u>ã</u>o	pound (but more nasal)
-am	am<u>a</u>m	mound (but more nasal)
-em, -en(s)	se<u>m</u>	saint (approx.)
	para<u>b</u>é<u>n</u>s	chain (approx.)
õe	p<u>õ</u>e	boing (approx.)

1.4 Stress

Portuguese words are normally stressed on the penultimate syllable, or on the final syllable if ending in -r, -l, -z or -u. In these cases, the accent is not required:

do-cu-<u>men</u>-to	document
ve-<u>lu</u>-do	velvet
pro-fes-<u>so</u>r	teacher
ti-<u>rar</u>	take
co-<u>mer</u>	eat
par-<u>tir</u>	break
pa-<u>pel</u>	paper
a-<u>zul</u>	blue
ca-<u>paz</u>	capable
fe-<u>liz</u>	happy
pe-<u>ru</u>	turkey

But whenever the stress falls on the antepenultimate or the last syllable, other than in the cases indicated above, the word has to take an accent:

ú <i>l</i> - ti - mo	last
cha - mi - né	chimney
ir - mã	sister
fú - til	futile
mó - vel	piece of furniture/mobile

1.5 Accents

In Portuguese there are four accents:

- ´ acute accent (opens the vowel): **á**gua
- ^ circumflex accent (closes the vowel): **Zê**zere
- ~ tilde (nasalizes the vowel): **irmã**
- ` grave accent (used only when there is a contraction of the preposition **a** with an article or pronoun): **à**, **à**quilo (**a** + **a** = **à**; **a** + **aquilo** = **àquilo**)

The accent is also used:

(a) to distinguish different words:

pelo	by	pêlo	fur; body hair
maça	mace	maçã	apple
pela	by, for, through	péla	ball

(b) to distinguish verbal forms:

compramos	we buy	comprámos	we bought
------------------	--------	------------------	-----------

Note: The Brazilian variant takes no accent on the verbs with the same spelling but different tenses. Even the pronunciation is kept the same.

Chapter 2

Nouns

2.1 Gender I: masculine and feminine

There are two genders: masculine and feminine. The gender of a noun is determined by its ending, its meaning or its origin.

Note: When you learn new words, always make sure you learn their genders! Learn them together with the appropriate definite article.

2.1.1 The masculine gender is normally used for male persons, animals and professions commonly assigned to males. Most nouns ending in -o, -l, -r and -z are masculine:

o pato	duck	o colar	necklace
o papel	paper	o juíz	judge

2.1.1.1 Also masculine are:

- *Names of oceans, seas, rivers, lakes, capes and mountain ranges*

o Atlântico	the Atlantic	o Lucerna	Lake Lucerne
o Báltico	the Baltic	o Finisterra	Cape Finisterre
o Tejo	the Tagus	os Himalaias	the Himalayas

- *Wines*

o Porto	Port	o Dão	Dão
----------------	------	--------------	-----

- *Cars*

o Ferrari	Ferrari	o Rover	Rover
------------------	---------	----------------	-------

- *Names of seasons*

o Verão	Summer
o Outono	Autumn
o Inverno	Winter

But **a Primavera** Spring

- *Names of letters:* o 'a'; o 'p'
- *Cardinal numbers:* o um; o duzentos 'one; two hundred'

But the gender of *ordinal numbers* agrees with that of the noun they correspond to:

	minuto		minute
	dia		day
o primeiro	mês	the first	month
	ano		year
	século		century
a primeira hora		the first hour	
a primeira semana		the first week	

- *Words of Greek origin ending in -a*

o telegrama	telegram	o clima	climate
o mapa	map	o telefonema	phone call
o cinema	cinema		

2.1.2 The feminine gender is normally used for female persons, animals and professions commonly assigned to females. Most nouns ending in **-a**, **-ã**, **-ade**, **-ice** and **-gem** are feminine:

a panela	pot	a velhice	old age
a irmã	sister	a viagem	journey
a verdade	truth		

But do not forget that there are some words that end in **-a** and are masculine! (See above, 2.1.1.1.)

2.1.2.1 Also feminine are:

- *Names of sciences and arts*

a Medicina Medicine **a Pintura** Painting
a Matemática Mathematics **a Música** Music

But **o Teatro** and **o Cinema**

- *Days of the week*

a segunda-feira Monday **a quinta-feira** Thursday
a terça-feira Tuesday **a sexta-feira** Friday
a quarta-feira Wednesday

But **o sábado** Saturday

o domingo Sunday

2.1.3 Most concrete nouns ending in -e and -ão are masculine:

o leite milk **o limão** lemon

But **a mão** hand

2.1.4 Abstract nouns ending in -e and -ão are feminine:

a morte death **a paixão** passion

2.2 Gender II: forming the feminine

Nouns ending in	Add	Change into
-o		-a
consonant	-a	
-or	-a	
-or		-triz
-or		-eira
-eu		-eia
-ão		-ã
-ão		-oa
-ão		-ona

2.2.1 Most nouns ending in **-o** form their feminine by changing this ending into **-a**:

o tio **a tia** uncle aunt

2.2.2 Most nouns ending in a consonant or **-or** form their feminine by adding an **-a**:

o português **a portuguesa** Portuguese man/woman
o cantor **a cantora** singer

But there are two exceptions! See 2.2.2.1 and 2.2.2.2.

2.2.2.1 Nouns ending in **-or** can change into **-triz** (fem.):

o actor **a atriz** actor actress
o embaixador **a embaixatriz**¹ ambassador ambassadress

¹ *Embaixatriz* is the wife of the ambassador; *but* if the ambassador is a woman, she is an *embaixadora*.

2.2.2.2 Nouns ending in **-or** can also change into **-eira**:

o lavrador **a lavradora** farmer

2.2.3 Nouns ending in **-eu** form their feminine by changing into **-eia**:

o europeu **a europeia**^B the European

2.2.4 Nouns ending in **-ão** form their feminine by changing into **-ã**, **-oa** or **-ona**:

o anão **a anã** dwarf
o leão **a leoa** lion lioness
o solteiro **a solteirona** bachelor spinster

But **o barão** **a baronesa** baron baroness

2.2.5 Some nouns have different endings for their masculine and feminine forms:

o consul	a consulesa	consul	
o herói	a heroína	hero	heroine
o poeta	a poetisa	poet	poetess

2.2.6 Some nouns have a common form for both genders.

2.2.6.1 The only thing that varies is the article:

o doente	a doente	patient
o jovem	a jovem	youth
o artista	a artista	artist
o presidente	a presidente	president
o concorrente	a concorrente	competitor/contestant
o intérprete	a intérprete	interpreter
o colega	a colega	colleague
o estudante	a estudante	student
o emigrante	a emigrante	emigrant
o dentista	a dentista	dentist
o turista	a turista	tourist
o jornalista	a jornalista	journalist
o guia	a guia	guide
o ciclista	a ciclista	cyclist

2.2.6.2 The article remains the same whether it refers to male or female:

a criança	child
a testemunha	witness
o cônjuge	spouse

2.2.7 There are also pairs of words to denote male and female:

o macho	a fêmea	male	female
o cavalo	a égua	stallion	mare
o cão	a cadela	dog	bitch
o bode	a cabra	billy-goat	nanny-goat
o carneiro	a ovelha	ram	ewe
o boi	a vaca	ox	cow
o galo	a galinha	cockerel, rooster	hen
o rapaz	a rapariga/ a moça^B	boy	girl
o homem	a mulher	man	woman
o marido	a esposa	husband	wife
o pai	a mãe	father	mother
o padrasto	a madrasta	stepfather	stepmother
o padrinho	a madrinha	godfather	godmother
o genro	a nora	son-in-law	daughter-in-law
o avô	a avó	grandfather	grandmother
o rei	a rainha	king	queen

2.2.8 Some nouns referring to animals have a fixed form and gender regardless of the animal's sex:

o abutre	vulture	a formiga	ant
o rouxinol	nightingale	a foca	seal
o tigre	tiger	a raposa	fox
o búfalo	buffalo	a cobra	snake
o antílope	antílope	a zebra	zebra

2.2.8.1 When it is necessary to indicate the sex of these animals, the Portuguese equivalent to male (**macho**) and female (**fêmea**) should be used:

- o abutre fêmea** or **a fêmea do abutre** female vulture
- a foca macho** or **o macho da foca** male seal

Note: Adjectives qualifying these nouns agree with the gender of the noun and not with the gender of the animal:

- um bonito tigre fêmea** a beautiful female tiger
- uma bonita foca macho** a beautiful male seal

Number:
forming the
plural

2.3 Number: forming the plural

Nouns ending in	Add	Change into
vowel	-s	
nasal diphthongs	-s	
consonant:		
-n, -r, -s, -z	-es	
-ão		-ões
-ão		-ães
-ão		-ãos
-m		-ns
-al		-ais
-el		-eis
-ol		-ois
-ul		-uis
-il (stressed)		-is
-il (unstressed)		-eis

2.3.1 Nouns ending in a vowel or a nasal diphthong generally form their plural by adding an -s:

a mesa	as mesas	table	tables
o jogo¹	os jogos	game	games
a lei	as leis	law	laws
o chapéu	os chapéus	hat	hats
a mãe	as mães	mother	mothers

¹ Usually, the closed -o- sound of the stressed syllable in a word ending in -o changes into its equivalent open sound before adding the -s:

o jogo	os jogos	game	games
o almoço	os almoços	lunch	lunches
o corpo	os corpos	body	bodies
o ovo	os ovos	egg	eggs
o povo	os povos	people	peoples
o osso	os ossos	bone	bones
o olho	os olhos	eye	eyes
o fogo	os fogos	fire	fires
o imposto	os impostos	tax	taxes

2.3.2 Nouns ending in a consonant (-n, -r, -s, -z) form their plural by adding -es:

o líquen	os líquenes	lichen	lichens
o professor	os professores	teacher	teachers
o país	os países	country	countries
a luz	as luzes	light	lights

2.3.3 The majority of nouns ending in -ão form their plural by changing this ending into -ões:

a ambição	as ambições	ambition	ambitions
o coração	os corações	heart	hearts

But a few change into *-ães*:

o pão	os pães	bread	loaves of bread
o cão	os cães	dog	dogs
o alemão	os alemães	the German	the Germans

and fewer still into *-ãos*:

a mão	as mãos	hand	hands
o irmão	os irmãos	brother	brothers

2.3.4 Nouns ending in *-m* form their plural by changing into *-ns*:

o som	os sons	sound	sounds
a nuvem	as nuvens	cloud	clouds

2.3.5 Nouns ending in *-al*, *-el*, *-ol* and *-ul* form their plural by changing into *-ais*, *-eis*, *-ois* and *-uis*:

o animal	os animais	animal	animals
o hotel	os hotéis	hotel	hotels
o sol	os sóis	sun	suns
o azul	os azuis	the colour blue	the shades of blue

But

o mal	os males	evil	evils
o consul	os consules	consul	consuls

2.3.6 Nouns ending in stressed *-il* form their plural by changing into *-is*:

o funil	os funis	funnel	funnels
----------------	-----------------	--------	---------

2.3.7 But nouns ending in unstressed *-il* change into *-eis* in the plural:

o fóssil	os fósseis	fossil	fossils
-----------------	-------------------	--------	---------

2.3.8 Some nouns ending in -s have the same form for both singular and plural:

o lápis	os lápis	pencil	pencils
o ourives	os ourives	goldsmith	goldsmiths
o cais	os cais	quay	quays
o pires	os pires	saucer	saucers

2.3.9 Some nouns are almost exclusively used in the plural form:

as algemas	handcuffs	os óculos	glasses
as calças	trousers	os calções	shorts

2.3.10 Some words have different meanings in the singular and in the plural:

o pai	os pais	father	fathers/parents
o filho	os filhos	son	sons/children
a avó	as avós	grandmother	grandmothers
	os avós		grandparents

2.4 Diminutives and augmentatives

	<i>Diminutive suffixes</i>	<i>Augmentative suffixes</i>
Fem.	zinha, zita, inha	ona
Masc.	zinho, zito, inho	ão

2.4.1 The Portuguese language uses diminutive and augmentative suffixes to express degrees of size, intensity, affection, etc. Normally, diminutives are used to express smallness, affection and pity, whereas augmentatives usually express largeness, greatness, beauty or ugliness.^B

Diminutives

- smallness **carrinho** small car
- affection **mãezinha** mummy
- pity **coitadinho** poor thing

Augmentatives

- largeness **carrão** large car
- greatness **mulherona** strong woman
- beauty **mulherão** beautiful woman
- ugliness **carão** ugly face

Note: It is not always possible to translate diminutives or augmentatives into English. *These suffixes can have pejorative or grotesque meanings. They should be used by beginners with caution!*

2.4.2 Diminutives are generally used by children or by adults when talking to children:

A minha amiguinha chama-se Joaquinha e vai comigo à escolinha.

My little friend is called Joaquinha and she is in my school.

Se comeres a comidinha toda vais ganhar uma prendinha!

If you eat all this lovely food you will get a nice present!

2.4.3 The most common diminutive suffixes are **-zinha, -zinho, -zita, -zito** and **-inha, -inho, -ita, -ito**.^B

2.4.3.1 **-zinha, -zinho, -zita, -zito** can simply be added to the end of the word:

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|---|--------------|---|-------------------|--------------------------|
| mamã | + | zinha | = | mamãzinha | mummy |
| móvel | + | zinho | = | movelzinho | small piece of furniture |
| João | + | zinho | = | Joãozinho | Johnny |
| avião | + | zinho | = | aviãozinho | little plane |
| café | + | zinho | = | cafezinho | small cup of coffee |
| viela | + | zita | = | vielazita | small alley |
| pó | + | zito | = | pozito | light dust |

If the word contains an accent, that accent is dropped unless it is indicating a nasal sound:

pé	+	zito	=	pezito	foot
chá	+	zinho	=	chazinho	tea
avião¹	+	zinho	=	aviãozinho	little plane

¹ The plural of these words is formed from the normal plural of the word itself before adding -s:
avião/aviãozinho **aviões/aviõeszinhos**
anão/anãozinho **anões/anõeszinhos**

2.4.3.2 Words ending in **-m** change into **-n** before adding the suffix:

homem	+	zinho	=	homenzinho	little man
romagem	+	zinha	=	romagenzinha	small pilgrimage
viagem	+	zita	=	viagenzita	small trip

2.4.3.3 Words ending in **-s, -z**, only need **-inho** or **-ito** to form a diminutive:

inglês	+	inho	=	inglesinho	nice English boy
nariz	+	inho	=	narizinho	pretty little nose
rapaz	+	ito	=	rapazito	little boy

2.4.3.4 Words ending in **-l** may need **-zinho** or just **-inho** to form a diminutive. You should learn the most common forms!

papel	+	inho	=	papelinho	small piece of paper
girassol	+	zinho	=	girassolzinho	small sunflower
barril	+	zito	=	barrilzito	small barrel

2.4.3.5 When **-inha, -inho, -ita, -ito** are added to nouns and adjectives ending in unstressed **-a, -e, or -o**, the final vowel is removed and the suffix is then added to the word:

fest(a)	+	inha	=	festinha	small party
gent(e)	+	inha	=	gentinha	people

tard(e)	+	inha	=	tardinha	early evening
cop(o)	+	inho	=	copinho	small glass
cop(o)	+	ito	=	copito ¹	a small drink of wine

But

pequeno > **pequenino** or **pequeninho** very small/tiny

¹ Idiomatic use in Portugal.

2.4.4 The most common augmentative suffixes are **-ão** for the masculine and **-ona** for the feminine. When they are added to the word, the final vowel of the root word is suppressed:

livr(o)	+	ão	=	livrão	massive book
mes(a)	+	ona	=	mesona	huge table

2.5 Compound nouns

2.5.1 There are two ways of forming compound nouns in Portuguese.

2.5.1.1 Compounds can be formed by juxtaposition (the structure of the words is not modified):

pontapé	(ponta + pé)	a kick
terça-feira	(terça + feira)	Tuesday
cor-de-rosa	(cor + de + rosa)	pink

2.5.1.2 Compounds can also be formed by agglutination (the words contract and lose one or more of their phonetic elements):

aguardente	(água + ardente)	brandy
-------------------	---------------------------	--------

2.5.2 There are four different ways of forming the plural of compound nouns.

2.5.2.1 Both words take an -s if they are:

noun	+	noun	couve-flor/couves-flores	cauliflower/s
noun	+	adjective	obra-prima/obras-primas	masterpiece/s
adjective	+	noun	má-língua/más-línguas	gossip/s
numeral	+	noun	quinta-feira/quintas-feiras	Thursday/s

2.5.2.2 The second word takes an -s if the two words are:

linked without hyphen		passatempo/passatempos	hobby/ies	
verb	+	noun	guarda-chuva/ guarda-chuvas	umbrella/s
invariable	+	variable noun	vice-rei/vice-reis	viceroys

2.5.2.3 The first word takes an -s if the two words are:

linked by a preposition		caminho-de-ferro/ caminhos-de-ferro	railway/s
second word defines first		navio-escola/ navios-escola	training-ship/s

2.5.2.4 Both words stay the same in the plural if they are:

verb	+	adverb	fala-barato	wind-bag/s (in Portugal)
verb	+	plural noun	saca-rolhas	corkscrew/s

2.6 Collective nouns

Collective nouns are singular nouns that express the idea of a group of beings or things of the same kind:

uma alcateia	(de lobos)	a pack (of wolves)
uma matilha	(de cães)	a pack (of dogs)
um rebanho	(de ovelhas)	a flock (of sheep)
uma manada	(de gado)	a herd (of cattle)

um pomar	(de árvores de fruto)	an orchard (of fruit trees)
um enxame	(de abelhas)	a swarm (of bees)
uma quadrilha	(de ladrões)	a gang (of thieves)
um cardume	(de peixes)	a shoal (of fish)
uma multidão	(de gente)	a crowd (of people)
uma cáfila	(de camelos)	a caravan (of camels)

Articles

3.1 Definite article

o (masc. sing.)	o chão	the floor
a (fem. sing.)	a porta	the door
os (masc. pl.)	os telhados	the roofs
as (fem. pl.)	as janelas	the windows

The definite article, which corresponds to ‘the’ in English, is used to designate a specific noun, with which it agrees in gender and number:

Eu não gosto muito de cães, mas o cão da Isabel é amoroso.

I am not very fond of dogs but Isabel’s dog is adorable.

Ontem encontrei o Francisco, que lia o jornal.

Yesterday I met Francisco, who was reading the newspaper.

3.2 Use of the definite article

3.2.1 With first names:^B **O João, a Joana.**

Note: As a rule first names in Portuguese are preceded by a definite article (as opposed to Spanish, but similar to Catalan).

3.2.2 With titles and certain forms of address:^B

O senhor/a senhora/a menina quer uma chávena de chá?

Would you like a cup of tea?

A Sra. D. Laura Costa cozinha muito bem.^B

Mrs Costa cooks very well.

A encomenda veio para o Sr. Dr. Gomes.

The parcel is for Dr/Mr Gomes.

O Sr. Eng.º Costa não está. Quer deixar recado?

Mr Costa is not here. Would you like to leave a message?
(see forms of address below: 12.10.3 and 12.10.4.)

3.2.3 With names of continents, countries, islands and rivers:

a Europa	Europe	a Madeira	Madeira
o Brasil	Brazil	o Tamisa	the Thames
<i>But</i>	(-) Portugal	(-) Angola	
	(-) Cabo Verde	(-) Moçambique	

3.2.4 With days of the week:

A terça-feira é feriado. Tuesday is a bank holiday.

3.2.5 Before possessive adjectives:^B

a minha amiga my (female) friend **o nosso carro** our car

3.3 Omission of the definite article

3.3.1 When referring to well-known or outstanding figures (except when a nuance of familiarity or disparagement is implied or when a reference to his/her work is made):

Gago Coutinho foi um aviador português famoso.

Gago Coutinho was a famous Portuguese pilot.

But

O Gulbenkian tinha rios de dinheiro.

That Gulbenkian was rolling in it.

(a very free translation which conveys the flavour of the original)

3.3.2 When a title is used as a vocative:

Sente-se melhor agora, Sr. Gomes?

Are you feeling better now, Mr Gomes?

3.3.3 When a title includes a possessive pronoun:

Sua Majestade, o Rei da Espanha

His Majesty the King of Spain

Sua Excelência, o Presidente da República

His Excellency the President of the Republic

3.3.4 Usually before names of cities and towns:

Lisboa é a capital de Portugal.

Lisbon is the capital of Portugal.

Londres é a capital da Inglaterra.

London is the capital of England.

But

o Porto

o Rio de Janeiro

3.3.5 After the verbs *estudar*, *falar* and *tocar*:

Eu estudo química. I study chemistry.

Eu falo espanhol. I speak Spanish.

Eu toco piano. I play the piano.

3.3.6 When making a generalization:

Eu adoro flores. I love flowers.

But

Eu adoro as flores perfumadas. I love fragrant flowers.

3.4 Contraction of the definite article

3.4.1 The definite article can be contracted with the prepositions **de**, **em**, **a** and **por** as follows.

3.4.1.1 Preposition **de** + article, meaning 'in', 's', ', 'of', 'from':

- de + o = do** **O melhor do mundo!**
The best in the world!
- de + a = da** **o livro da Manuela**
Manuela's book
- de + os = dos** **O teor dos discursos . . .**
The content of the speeches . . .
- de + as = das** **Ela é das Ilhas Gregas.**
She is from the Greek islands.

3.4.1.2 Preposition **em** + article, meaning 'on', 'at', 'about', 'of', 'in', 'into':

- em + o = no** **O saco está no banco.**
The bag is on the bench.
- em + a = na** **Eu ando na universidade.**
I am at university.
- em + os = nos** **Ele pensa sempre nos filhos.**
He always thinks of/about his children.
- em + as = nas** **Já viste nas gavetas?**
Have you checked in the drawers?

3.4.1.3 Preposition **a** + article, meaning 'on', 'to', 'at':

- a + o = ao** **Ele está ao telefone.**
He is on the phone.
- a + a = à** **A minha avó vai à missa todos os domingos.**
My grandmother goes to mass every Sunday.
- a + os = aos** **Já enviámos as encomendas aos clientes.**
We have already sent the parcels to our clients.
- a + as = às** **O jantar de gala é às nove da noite.**
The gala dinner is at 9 p.m.

3.4.1.4 Preposition **por** + article, meaning ‘along’, ‘by’, ‘through’, ‘for’:

- por** + **o** = **pelo** **Siga pelo corredor da direita.**
Go along the corridor on the right.
- por** + **a** = **pela** **As informações foram dadas pela testemunha.**
The information was provided by the witness.
- por** + **os** = **pelos** **Nós corremos pelos campos.**
We ran through the fields.
- por** + **as** = **pelas** **Ela faz tudo pelas filhas.**
She does everything for her daughters.

3.5 Indefinite article

um	(masc. sing.)	um jardim	a garden
uma	(fem. sing.)	uma escova	a brush
uns	(masc. pl.)	uns discos	some/a few records
umas	(fem. pl.)	umas praias	some/a few beaches

The indefinite article, which corresponds to the English forms ‘a’, ‘an’ and ‘some’, is used to designate non-specific nouns, with which it agrees in gender and number.

Ontem encontrei um amigo num café.

Yesterday I met a friend in a café.

Note: Although **uns** and **umas** can be considered the plural of the indefinite article, the true plural of a *noun + indefinite article* in Portuguese is that noun in its plural form, standing alone. **Uns** and **umas** actually convey the meaning of ‘some’ or **alguns/algumas**, as opposed to ‘others’, **outros/outras**.

Havia uma flor em cima da mesa.

There was a flower on the table.

Havia flores em cima da mesa.

There were flowers on the table.

Havia umas flores em cima da mesa.

There were some flowers on the table.

3.6 Use of the indefinite article

3.6.1 To relate someone to a famous personality:

Ele não é propriamente um Camões, mas escreve poemas belíssimos.

He is not exactly a Camões, but he writes beautiful poems.

3.6.2 To indicate someone we do not know very well (could imply disparaging tone):

Quem ganhou o concurso foi um Rui Sá.

The contest was won by a certain Rui Sá.

3.6.3 To indicate a piece of work by a famous person (usually a painter):

O André comprou um Vieira da Silva muito valioso.

André has bought a very valuable Vieira da Silva.

Ele vestia um Armani.

He was wearing an Armani.

3.6.4 When it means ‘a pair’, ‘about’ or ‘such’:

umas calças e uns sapatos

a pair of trousers and a pair of shoes

Ficaram feridos uns quarenta homens.

About forty men were injured.

Tens umas ideias!

You have such (strange) ideas!

Ela tem uns lindos olhos!

She has such beautiful eyes!

3.7 Omission of the indefinite article

3.7.1 Before an unqualified noun, often indicating profession, rank or nationality:

O meu tio é dentista. My uncle is a dentist.

But the article is used if the noun is qualified by an adjective, as a way of stressing the idea conveyed by that adjective:

O meu tio é um excelente dentista.
My uncle is an excellent dentist.

O meu tio é um dentista excelente.

3.7.2 When making a generalization:

O hotel estava cheio de belgas e alemães.
The hotel was full of Belgian and German guests.

3.8 Contraction of the indefinite article

3.8.1 The indefinite article can be combined with the prepositions *em* and *de*.

3.8.1.1 Preposition *em* + indefinite article, meaning ‘on a’, ‘in a’, ‘into such’:

em + um = num **Ele sentou-se num banco.**
He sat on a bench.

em + uma = numa **Ponha o bolo numa caixa, por favor.**
Put the cake in a box, please.

em + uns = nuns **O artigo usa-se nuns casos e omite-se noutros.**
The article is used in some cases and omitted in others.

em + umas = numas **Meti-me numas embrulhadas!**
I got into such trouble!

3.8.1.2 Colloquial use of the preposition **de** + indefinite article, meaning ‘of a’, ‘of some’. Although this use is possible, it should be avoided in educated written Portuguese.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| de + um = dum | o filho dum carpinteiro
the son of a carpenter |
| de + uma = duma | a filha duma amiga
the daughter of a friend |
| de + uns = duns | Preciso duns óculos.
I need some glasses. |
| de + umas = dumas | A casa é dumas amigas.
The house belongs to some friends. |

Contraction
of the
indefinite
article

Adjectives

4.1 Gender

4.1.1 In matters of gender, adjectives tend to follow the same rules as nouns (see 2.1 and 2.2).

4.1.1.1 As a rule, adjectives have a feminine form in **-a** (especially adjectives ending in **-o**, **-ês**, **-or** and **-u**):

magro	magra	thin
inglês	inglesa	English (man/woman)
encantador	encantadora	charming
nu	nua	naked

But some adjectives ending in **-or** have the same form for both the masculine and the feminine:

anterior	anterior	bicolor	bicolour
posterior	posterior	interior	interior
incolor	colourless	exterior	exterior

And the same happens with the comparative form of adjectives:

maior	bigger	inferior	inferior
menor	smaller	melhor	better
superior	superior	pior	worse

4.1.1.2 Adjectives ending in **-eu** have a feminine form in **-cia**:

europ<u>eu</u>	europ<u>eia</u>^B	European
at<u>eu</u>	at<u>eia</u>	atheist

But

jud<u>eu</u>	jud<u>ia</u>	Jewish
---------------------	---------------------	--------

4.1.1.3 Adjectives ending in **-ão** can have feminine forms in **-ã**, **-oa** or **-ona**:

alem<u>ão</u>	alem<u>ã</u>	German
beir<u>ão</u>	beir<u>oa</u>	native of Beira (Portugal)
brincalh<u>ão</u>	brincalh<u>ona</u>	playful

4.1.2 However, most adjectives ending in **-a**, **-e**, **-ar**, **-l**, **-m**, **-s** and **-z** in the masculine keep the same form in the feminine:

hipócrit<u>a</u>	hypocritical	original	original
pessimist<u>a</u>	pessimist	principal	main
homicid<u>a</u>	homicidal	rural	rural
agríc<u>ola</u>	agricultural	sensível	sensitive
carec<u>a</u>	bald	terrível	terrible
		possível	possible
doce	sweet	cruel	cruel
verde	green	amável	kind
forte	strong	fácil	easy
pobre	poor	útil	useful
triste	sad	imbecil	idiotic
grande	big	difícil	difficult
brilhante	brilliant	gentil	charming/kind
quente	hot	azul	blue

doente	ill		
prudente	prudent	ruim	bad/wicked
		comum	common
regular	regular	jovem	young
vulgar	ordinary		
		capaz	capable
simples	simple	veloz	fast
reles	vulgar	feliz	happy

But espanhol (masc.)/espanhola (fem.)

4.1.3 Some adjectives have irregular feminine forms:

bom	boa	good
mau	má	bad

4.1.4 In compound adjectives only the second element takes the feminine form:

luso-britânico	luso-britânica	Anglo-Portuguese
-----------------------	-----------------------	------------------

But

surdo-mudo	surda-muda	deaf-mute
-------------------	-------------------	-----------

4.2 Number

4.2.1 In matters of number, adjectives tend to follow the same rules as nouns (see 2.3).

4.2.1.1 Adjectives ending in a vowel add an -s in the plural (see 2.3.1):

branco	brancos	white
branca	brancas	

4.2.1.2 Adjectives ending in a consonant (-r, -s, -z) add -es (see 2.3.2):

maior	maiores	bigger
francês	franceses	French
capaz	capazes	capable

Note: The plural form of adjectives ending in -ês loses the circumflex accent.

4.2.1.3 Most adjectives ending in -ão change into -ões, a few into -ães and even fewer into -ãos (see 2.3.3):

espertalhão	espertalhões	cunning
alemão	alemães	German
são	sãos	healthy

4.2.1.4 Adjectives ending in -m change into -ns (see 2.3.4):

comum	comuns	common
--------------	---------------	--------

4.2.1.5 Adjectives ending in -al, -el, -ol and -ul change into -ais, -eis, -ois and -uis (see 2.3.5):

leal	leais	loyal
cruel	crueis	cruel
espanhol	espanhois	Spanish
azul	azuis	blue

4.2.1.6 Adjectives ending in stressed -il form their plural by changing into -is (see 2.3.6):

imbecil	imbecis	idiotic
----------------	----------------	---------

4.2.1.7 But adjectives ending in unstressed -il change into -eis in the plural (see 2.3.7):

útil	úteis	useful
versátil	versáteis	versatile

4.2.1.8 Adjectives ending in -s have the same form in both singular and plural (see 2.3.8):

uma canção simples/duas canções simples

one simple song/two simple songs

um homem reles/dois homens reles

one vulgar man/two vulgar men

4.2.2 In compound adjectives, only the second element takes the plural form:

luso-britânico luso-britânicos Anglo-Portuguese

But

um rapaz surdo-mudo/dois rapazes surdos-mudos

one deaf-mute boy/two deaf-mute boys

4.3 Degree

4.3.1 The comparative

superiority **mais ... (do) que** more ... than

equality **tão ... como**
tão ... quanto^B as ... as

inferiority **menos ... (do) que** less ... than

Note: **Do que** is used to compare nouns, and **que** is used to compare adjectives:

A lebre é mais veloz do que a tartaruga.

The hare is faster *than* the tortoise.

O João é mais estudioso que inteligente.

John is *more* studious *than* intelligent.

O vinho é tão caro como a cerveja.

Wine is *as* expensive *as* beer.

Os hotéis são tão bons em Portugal como no Brasil.

Os hotéis são tão bons em Portugal quanto no Brasil.^B

Hotels are *as* good in Portugal *as* in Brazil.

O Outono é menos quente do que o Verão.

Autumn is *less warm than* Summer.

O clima junto do mar é menos frio que ventoso.

The climate by the sea is *less cold than* windy.

The adverbs **mais** and **menos** may be reinforced by **ainda** ('even'), **muito** ('much') or **bem** ('quite, far more'):

O João é $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ainda} \\ \text{muito} \\ \text{bem} \end{array} \right\}$ **mais atlético do que a Catarina.**

João is even/much/far more athletic than Catarina.

After the comparatives **anterior**, **posterior**, **inferior**, **superior** and **exterior**, the second term of the comparison is introduced by the preposition **a** (here meaning 'than' or 'to'):

O apartamento da Rua Direita é inferior a este.

The flat in Rua Direita is worse than this one.

A qualidade do *Expresso* é superior à de muitos jornais portugueses.¹

The quality of the *Expresso* is superior to that of many Portuguese newspapers.

¹ Remember that preposition **a** + definite article **a** = **à** (see 3.4.1.3 above).

4.3.2 The superlative

4.3.2.1 The relative superlative of superiority: **o, a, os, as mais ... de/que**; of inferiority: **o, a, os, as menos ... de/que**:

A Ana é a rapariga mais camarada da turma.

Ana is *the friendliest girl in* the class.

O Jorge é o rapaz menos camarada que alguma vez conheci.

Jorge is *the least friendly boy that* I have ever met.

4.3.2.2 The absolute superlative

4.3.2.2.1 The absolute superlative is usually formed by adding the suffix **-íssimo** to the adjective:

O Gustavo é engraçadíssimo. Gustavo is extremely funny.

Note: The ending of the adjective, however, may suffer some changes before the suffix **-íssimo** can be added:

(a) Adjectives ending in **-l**, **-r** and **-s** just add **-íssimo**:

original	originalíssimo	<i>extremely original</i>
vulgar	vulgaríssimo	<i>extremely ordinary</i>
português	portuguêsíssimo	<i>extremely Portuguese</i>

(b) In adjectives ending in a vowel the final vowel is removed before adding **-íssimo**:

calm(o)	calmíssimo	<i>extremely calm</i>
trist(e)	tristíssimo	<i>extremely sad</i>
baix(o)	baixíssimo	<i>extremely low/short</i>

(c) Adjectives ending in **-vel** change into **-bilíssimo**:

agradá(vel)	agradabilíssimo	<i>most pleasant</i>
notá(vel)	notabilíssimo	<i>highly notable</i>
horrí(vel)	horribilíssimo	<i>utterly horrible</i>

(d) Adjectives ending in **-m** change into **-níssimo**:

comum	comuníssimo	<i>extremely common</i>
--------------	--------------------	-------------------------

(e) Adjectives ending in **-z** change into **-císsimo**:

feliz	felicíssimo	<i>extremely happy</i>
veloz	velocíssimo	<i>extremely fast</i>

(f) Adjectives ending in **-ão** change into **-aníssimo**:

são	saníssimo	<i>extremely healthy</i>
temporão	temporaníssimo	<i>extremely early (in the season)</i>

(g) Many adjectives revert to their Latin form before acquiring the superlative endings **-íssimo**, **-límimo** or **-érrimo**. You are advised to learn this list:

amigo	amicíssimo	<i>extremely</i>	friendly
antigo	antiquíssimo		old
simples	simplicíssimo		simple
geral	generalíssimo		general
amargo	amaríssimo		bitter
doce	dulcíssimo		sweet
frio	frigidíssimo		cold
nobre	nobilíssimo		noble
sábio	sapientíssimo		wise/knowledgeable
difícil	difícilímimo		difficult
fácil	facílímimo		easy
pobre	paupérrimo		poor
célebre	celebérrimo		famous

4.3.2.2.2 The absolute superlative can also be formed by placing an appropriate adverb before the adjective:

O Gustavo é muito engraçado.¹ Gustavo is very funny.

Note: Although the regular form is advised in formal language, *in conversation, the superlative formed with adverbs is preferred: muito frio* instead of *frigidíssimo*.

¹ *Muito* is the most commonly used adverb, but the following list can help to enrich your use of Portuguese:

bastante	very	extremamente	extremely
excepcionalmente	exceptionally	grandemente	greatly
excessivamente	excessively	imensamente	immensely
extraordinariamente	extraordinarily	terrivelmente	terribly

4.3.3 Special comparative and superlative forms

	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>	
		<i>Relative</i>	<i>Absolute</i>
bom	melhor ¹	o melhor	ótimo
mau	pior ²	o pior	péssimo
grande	maior ³	o maior	máximo
pequeno	menor ⁴	o menor	mínimo
muito	mais	o mais	muitíssimo
pouco	menos	o menos	pouquíssimo
	superior	o superior	supremo
	inferior	o inferior	ínfimo

¹ Never **mais bom**.

² Never **mais mau**.

³ Never **mais grande**.

⁴ *But* **mais pequeno** is more frequently used than **menor**, although in Brazilian Portuguese **menor** is preferred.^B

4.4 Agreement

4.4.1 In Portuguese, adjectives always agree in gender and number with the nouns they qualify:

um senhor alto a tall gentleman

duas senhoras altas two tall ladies

a língua e a cultura portuguesas

Portuguese language and culture

os casacos e os sapatos castanhos

the brown coats and the brown shoes

But if the nouns are of different gender, the adjective goes into the masculine plural:

as mulheres e os homens britânicos

the British women and men

O livro e a caneta são novos.

The book and the pen are new.

And if the nouns are of different number, the adjective changes to plural and agrees with the gender of the nouns it is qualifying, remembering that the masculine takes precedence over the feminine:

os cães e o gato vadios	the stray dogs and cat
a comida e as bebidas frias	cold food and drinks
a revista e os livros franceses	the French magazine and books

4.5 Position in the sentence

4.5.1 In Portuguese, adjectives usually follow the noun.

4.5.1.1 When the adjective describes a characteristic of the noun, such as colour, material, size, nationality, shape, religion or taste:

uma pasta azul	a blue briefcase
um tecido sedoso	a silky material
um livro grande	a large book
uma mulher holandesa	a Dutch woman
um saco redondo	a round bag
a religião católica	the Catholic religion
vinho doce	sweet wine

4.5.1.2 When the adjective is preceded by modifiers such as **muito**, **pouco**, **bastante**:

uma casa muito grande	a very big house
------------------------------	------------------

4.5.2 But the adjective can precede the noun in some cases.

4.5.2.1 If the relative superlative is used: **o melhor**, **o pior**, **o maior**, **o menor**:

O pior castigo é a prisão perpétua.

The worst punishment is life imprisonment.

4.5.2.2 With figurative meaning:

um grande homem	a great man
uma pobre mulher	an unfortunate woman
um velho amigo	an old friend (of many years)

4.5.2.3 Sometimes we can place an adjective before the noun in order to add other adjectives after it, and thus avoid a long monotonous list of adjectives:

uma excelente escola profissional
an excellent training school

Note: When combining a series of adjectives, start with the more general and finish with the more particular:

Eles vivem num casarão enorme, velho, feio e frio.
They live in a huge, old, ugly, and cold mansion.

Pronouns

5.1 Personal pronouns

There are five types of personal pronouns in Portuguese:

- subject pronouns;
- direct object pronouns;
- indirect object pronouns;
- prepositional pronouns;
- reflexive pronouns.

5.1.1 Subject pronouns^B

eu	I	nós	we
tu, você¹	you	(vós), vocês¹	you
ele, ela	he, she	eles, elas	they

¹ Você and vocês are forms of address and not pronouns, but they are often used as subject pronouns, especially in Brazilian Portuguese.

Tu is only used when addressing friends, relatives and children. **Você** is a little more formal, but not formal enough to address either someone you have never met before or a superior, in which case you should use **o senhor** or **a senhora**.

Although **você** and **o senhor/a senhora** mean ‘you’ (2nd person sing.) in English, in Portuguese the verb must be in the third person singular. To help you understand why, imagine that you are in court addressing the judge, and you call him ‘Your Honour’: ‘Does Your Honour require further information?’ As you can see, you have used the third person singular for

the verb, but what you really meant was ‘you’. This is similar to the way that *ocê* and *o senhor/a senhora* work in Portuguese.

Tu és muito simpático.

You (sing.) are very kind.

Você/o senhor/a senhora é muito simpático/a.

You (sing.) are very kind.

Vós is in parentheses in the above table because it is now considered an old-fashioned or regional form of address, and is usually replaced by *você*s. *Você*s works as the plural of both *tu* and *ocê*. As above, although this form refers to the second person plural, the verb in Portuguese is in the third person plural:

Vós sois muito simpáticos. You (pl.) are very kind.

Vocês são muito simpáticos. You (pl.) are very kind.

5.1.1.1 Subject pronouns are usually omitted in Portuguese, because the verb already contains information on person and number:^B

(tu) Vens ao cinema? Are you coming to the cinema?

(nós) Estávamos à tua espera. We were waiting for you.

5.1.1.2 *But* the subject pronoun must be specified whenever there is doubt as to whom the verb is referring:

Ele queria ir ao teatro. He wanted to go to the theatre.

Eu queria ir ao cinema. I wanted to go to the cinema.

5.1.1.3 The subject pronoun is also used to emphasize who is doing what:

Eu quero ir ao cinema, mas eles querem ir ao teatro.

I want to go to the cinema but they want to go to the theatre.

5.1.2 Direct object pronouns^B

me	me	nos	us
te	you	vos	you
o, a	him, her, it, you	os, as	them

5.1.2.1 Usually the direct object pronoun follows the verb and is linked to it by a hyphen:^B

(a) In affirmative statements:

Ele encontrou-vos no teatro.	He met <i>you</i> in the theatre.
Eu levo-te à estação.	I'll take <i>you</i> to the station.
Ela viu o Paulo. Ela viu-o.	She saw Paulo. She saw <i>him</i> .
O Rui compra a casa.	Rui buys the house.
Ele compra-a.	He buys <i>it</i> .

(b) In affirmative commands:

Come o bolo. Come-o.	Eat the cake. Eat <i>it</i> .
-----------------------------	-------------------------------

(c) In questions not introduced by an interrogative:

Viste-o ontem?	Did you see <i>him</i> yesterday?
-----------------------	-----------------------------------

(d) After co-ordinating conjunctions such as *e* ('and'), *mas* ('but'), *porém* ('however'), *todavia* ('nevertheless'), *contudo* ('however'):

Eu tinha duas canetas mas perdi-as.
I had two pens but I lost *them*.

Ele herdou uma fortuna, porém gastou-a em pouco tempo.
He inherited a fortune, however, he lost *it* in a short time.

5.1.2.2 But the direct object pronoun precedes the verb in the following cases:

(a) In negative sentences (*não*, *nunca*, *jamais*, *nem*, *ninguém*, *nenhum*, *nada*):

Ele não nos viu à janela.	He didn't see <i>us</i> at the window.
Nunca o tinha visto antes.	I had never seen <i>him</i> before.
Ninguém o soube.	Nobody knew <i>it</i> .

(b) In questions introduced by an interrogative (*quem?*, *qual?*, *quando?*, *onde?*, etc.):

Quem me faz um favor?	Who will do <i>me</i> a favour?
Onde os encontraste?	Where did you find <i>them</i> ?

- (c) After conjunctions such as **que** ('that') or **como** ('as'):

Acho que me viram à janela.

I think someone saw *me* at the window.

Como os queres preparar agora, aqui estão.

As/since/given that you want *them* prepared now, here they are.

- (d) When it follows adverbs such as: **ainda**, **tudo**, **sempre**, **também**, **talvez**, **pouco**, **bastante**, **muito**:

Ainda os tens?

Have you still got *them*?

Tudo nos recorda a nossa casa.

Everything reminds *us* of home.

Sempre a levavas para Leiria?^B

Are you finally taking *her* to Leiria?

Também vos lembram.

They also remember *you*.

Talvez os encontremos no cinema.

Perhaps we will meet *them* in the cinema.

Bastante me têm pedido que ignore o assunto.

They have often asked *me* to ignore the matter.

But the pronoun is placed *after* the verb if the adverb **sempre** is also placed after. Note that **sempre** is a modifier; it changes the meaning of the sentence depending on its position:

Eu encontro-o sempre na praia.

I always meet *him* at the beach.

Ontem sempre o vi na biblioteca.^B

Yesterday I finally saw *him* in the library.

- (e) When it follows adjectives or pronouns such as **todos/as**, **bastantes**, **muitos/muitas**, **poucos/as**, **alguém**, **algo**:

Todas me trouxeram um presente.

They all brought *me* a present.

Bastantes vezes os convidai.

I invited *them* many times.

Muitos me viram no programa de televisão.

Many people saw *me* on the television programme.

5.1.2.3 In positive sentences with Future and Conditional Tenses the direct object pronoun is placed between the verb stem and ending, but in negative sentences it precedes the verbal form as usual:^B

Essa decisão levá-lo-á à ruína.

That decision will lead you to ruin.

Mas esta alternativa não o levará à vitória.

But this alternative will not lead you to success.

Isso poder-me-ia afectar negativamente.

That could affect me negatively.

Mas não me importaria fazer nova tentativa.

But I would not mind having another go.

5.1.2.4 Variant forms of direct object pronouns:

(a) If the verb ends in a vowel or an oral diphthong, the pronoun is not altered:

A Maria fez um bolo e eu vi-o.

Maria baked a cake and I saw *it*.

Mas o João comeu-o todo sozinho.

But João ate *it* all by himself.

(b) If the verb ends in -r, -s or -z, these endings are removed and the pronouns -o, -a, -os, -as change into -lo, -la, -los, -las:

Vamos partir o bolo. Vamos parti-lo.

Let's cut the cake. Let's cut *it*.

Perdemos a faca. Perdêmo-la.

We lost the knife. We lost *it*.

Diz a verdade. Di-la.

Tell the truth. Tell *it*.

But

Ele quer a faca. Ele quere-a.

He wants the knife. He wants *it*.

Tu tens outra faca. Tu tem-la.

You have another knife. You have *it*.

Note: If the verb ends in *-ar* or *-az*, the *a* takes an acute accent to maintain the open sound of the vowel:

Vou provar o bolo. Vou prová-lo.

I'll try the cake. I'll try *it*.

A Maria faz bons bolos. Ela fá-los.

Maria bakes good cakes. She bakes *them*.

Note: If the verb ends in *-er* or *-ez*, the *e* takes a circumflex accent to maintain the closed sound of the vowel:

Muito prazer em conhecê-lo.

Very pleased to meet *you*.

A Maria fez bolos. A Maria fê-los.

Maria baked cakes. Maria baked *them*.

Note: Infinitives of compounds of *pôr* (e.g. *compor*, *dispor*, *repor*, etc.) do not have a circumflex accent on the 'o' but it is added when the final 'r' of the infinitive is dropped before taking a direct object pronoun:

Onde está o dinheiro? Devo repô-lo no cofre antes de sair.

Where is the money? I must put it back in the safe before leaving.

(c) If the verb ends in *-m*, *-ão*, *-õe* or *-ões*, the pronouns *-o*, *-a*, *-os*, *-as* change into *-no*, *-na*, *-nos*, *-nas*:

Eles sabem a verdade. Eles sabem-na.

They know the truth. They know *it*.

Elas são corajosas. Elas são-no.

They are brave. They are [*it*].

Elas põem a vida em risco. Elas põem-na em risco.

They put their lives at risk. They put *them* at risk.

Note: What decides the pronominal forms *-no*, *-na*, *-nos*, *-nas* is the verbal ending in a nasal diphthong, even if spelt with *-em* or *-am*:

Elas contam as suas aventuras. Elas contam-nas.

They recount their adventures. They recount *them*.

5.1.3 Indirect object pronouns^B

me	me	nos	us
te	you	vos	you
lhe	him, her, it, you	lhes	them

5.1.3.1 As with the direct object pronoun, the indirect object pronoun is linked to the verb by a hyphen and is placed after it in affirmative sentences, commands, questions not introduced by an interrogative and after co-ordinating conjunctions:

‘Dê-me o dinheiro!’, disse o ladrão.

‘Give *me* the money!’, said the thief.

Eu dei-lhe a carteira.

I gave *him* the handbag.

Deste-lhe mesmo? Sim, dei-a.

Did you really give it *to him*? Yes, I did (give it).

5.1.3.2 But it precedes the verb in negative and interrogative sentences, and after certain adverbs, just as the direct object pronoun (see above, 5.1.2.2):

Não lhes digas que eu estive aqui.

Don’t tell *them* I was here.

Quem te deu essa ideia?

Who gave *you* that idea?

Eles sempre me incomodam muito.

They always upset *me* deeply.

5.1.4 Contraction of the direct and indirect object pronouns

When direct and indirect object pronouns appear in the same sentence, they can be contracted. The indirect object pronoun precedes the direct object pronoun:

me + o = <i>mo</i>	nos + o = <i>no-lo</i>	(see 5.1.2.3)
me + a = <i>ma</i>	nos + a = <i>no-la</i>	
me + os = <i>mos</i>	nos + os = <i>no-los</i>	
me + as = <i>mas</i>	nos + as = <i>no-las</i>	
te + o = <i>to</i>	vos + o = <i>vo-lo</i>	
te + a = <i>ta</i>	vos + a = <i>vo-la</i>	
te + os = <i>tos</i>	vos + os = <i>vo-los</i>	
te + as = <i>tas</i>	vos + as = <i>vo-las</i>	
lhe + o = <i>lho</i>	lhes + o = <i>lho</i>	
lhe + a = <i>lha</i>	lhes + a = <i>lha</i>	
lhe + os = <i>lhos</i>	lhes + os = <i>lhos</i>	
lhe + as = <i>lhas</i>	lhes + as = <i>lhas</i>	

Ele deu-me o livro. Ele deu-mo. He gave it to me.

Ele deu-te a revista. Ele deu-ta. He gave it to you.

Ele deu-lhe os sapatos. Ele deu-lhos. He gave them to him/her.

Ele deu-nos a caneta. Ele deu-no-la. He gave it to us.

Ele deu-vos os discos. Ele deu-vo-los. He gave them to you.

Ele deu-lhes a garrafa. Ele deu-lha. He gave it to them.

Note: Word order is the same as for any direct or indirect object pronoun (see 5.1.2.2):

Ela deu-te o livro? Did she give you the book?

Não, ela não mo deu. No, she did not give it to me.

5.1.5 Prepositional pronouns^B

5.1.5.1 Prepositional pronouns are personal pronouns used with prepositions such as *de*, *em*, *para*, *por*, *sobre*:

mim	me	nós	us
ti, si ¹	you	(vós), vocês ²	you
ele, ela	him, her, it	eles, elas	them

Essas flores são para mim?

Are those flowers *for me*?

São. Foram enviadas por eles.

Yes. They were sent *by them*.

O que vai ser de nós?

What will become *of us*?

Não somos ninguém sem ela.

We are no one *without her*.

Tenho um presente para si/a senhora/o senhor/o sr. Dr., etc.¹

I have a present *for you*.

Também há presentes para vocês.²

There are also presents *for you*.

¹ Si corresponds to the personal pronoun *ocê*. Sometimes, to avoid confusion, one can equally use *o senhor*, *a senhora*, as objects of a preposition.

² The plural of *ti* and *si* is *ocês*, or *os senhores*, *as senhoras*, *Vs. Exas.*, etc. (since *vós* has become obsolete).

5.1.5.2 With the prepositions *com*, *em* and *de*, some prepositional pronouns change their form:

com + mim = comigo com + nós = conosco, conosco^B
 com + ti = contigo com + vós = convosco
 com + si = consigo

But com ele, com ela, com vocês, com eles, com elas.

de + ele = dele de + eles = deles
 de + ela = dela de + elas = delas

But de mim, de ti, de nós, de vocês.

em + ele = nele em + eles = neles
 em + ela = nela em + elas = nelas

But em mim, em ti, em nós, em vocês.

Note: Prepositional pronouns preceded by the preposition *a* can be used emphatically after direct or indirect object pronouns:

Dá-me o livro *a mim*.

Give the book *to me* (i.e. not to someone else).

5.1.6 Reflexive pronouns^B

eu lavo-me	I wash myself
tu lavas-te, você lava-se	you wash yourself
ele/ela lava-se	he/she washes himself/herself
nós lavamo-nos¹	we wash ourselves
(vós lavai-vos), vocês lavam-se	you wash yourselves
eles/elas lavam-se	they wash themselves

¹ When the pronoun is placed after a verbal form in the first person plural, the verb loses its final -s (nós lavamos – nós lavamo-nos).

5.1.6.1 As with direct and indirect object pronouns, the reflexive pronoun usually follows the verb (linked to it by a hyphen) except in negative and interrogative sentences, after conjunctions, prepositions and in relative clauses (see 5.1.2.2):

Ele sentou-se.

He sat down.

Mas ela não se sentou.

But she did not sit.

Elas choram porque se sentem tristes.

They cry because they feel sad.

Está na hora de me deitar.

It's time for me to go to bed.

Ele pediu-nos que nos levantássemos.

He asked us to stand up.

Quem se senta aqui?

Who is going to sit here?

5.1.6.2 The reflexive pronoun *se* – third person singular – is often used impersonally, translating the English ‘you’, ‘one’, ‘they’, ‘people’:

Neste restaurante come-se bem.

One can eat well in this restaurant.

5.2 Possessive pronouns and adjectives

Possessive pronouns and adjectives have exactly the same form in Portuguese, with the exception that the use of the article is optional with possessive pronouns.^B

Possessive adjectives are placed between the definite article and the noun they qualify, whereas possessive pronouns replace the noun and may be preceded by the definite article to add emphasis or to denote a contrast:

Possessive adjective

Possessive pronoun

As minhas malas são pesadas.

As malas pesadas são (as) minhas.

My suitcases are heavy.

The heavy suitcases are *mine*.

5.2.1 Possessive adjectives^B

o meu	a minha	os meus	as minhas	my
o teu/seu	a tua/sua	os teus/seus	as tuas/suas	your
o seu¹	a sua	os seus	as suas	his/her
o nosso	a nossa	os nossos	as nossas	our
o vosso	a vossa	os vossos	as vossas	your
o seu¹	a sua	os seus	as suas	their

¹ Since *seu/sua/seus/suas* can refer to the second person singular formal, to the third person singular and to the third person plural, some confusion often arises as to whom it refers. Therefore, *seu/sua/seus/suas* is usually replaced by a *de* phrase whenever it refers to the third persons:

o seu carro = *o carro dele/dela/deles/delas* his/her/their car

a sua carteira = *a carteira dele/dela/deles/delas* his/her/their wallet

O trabalho dela é mais completo do que o dele.

Her work is more thorough than his.

5.2.2 Possessive pronouns^B

(o) meu	(a) minha	(os) meus	(as) minhas	mine
(o) teu/seu	(a) tua/sua	(os) teus/seus	(as) tuas/suas	yours
(o) seu ¹	(a) sua	(os) seus	(as) suas	his/hers
(o) nosso	(a) nossa	(os) nossos	(as) nossas	ours
(o) vosso	(a) vossa	(os) vossos	(as) vossas	yours
(o) seu ¹	(a) sua	(os) seus	(as) suas	theirs

¹ These pronouns are usually replaced by a *de* phrase to avoid confusion (see 5.2.1).

5.2.3 In Portuguese, possessives agree in gender and number with the thing possessed and not with the possessor (as it does in English):

A Maria veio no seu carro.

Maria came in her car.

O Pedro veste a sua camisa nova.

Pedro puts on his new shirt.

5.2.4 As a rule, possessives are not used when the relationship between possessor and possessed is likely or obvious. This applies particularly to parts of the body, clothing or footwear; in this case, the definite article is preferred:

Ela veio de carro.

She came in her car./She came by car.

A Ana falou com a mãe.

Ana spoke to her mother.

Abre a boca e fecha os olhos.

Open your mouth and close your eyes.

A Raquel vestiu a camisa.

Raquel put on her shirt.

Ele engraxou os sapatos.

He polished his shoes.

But if the possessor is not clear, the possessive must be used:

Os meus olhos são verdes. My eyes are green.

A Ana visitou a minha mãe. Ana visited my mother.

5.3 Demonstrative pronouns

este	esta	estes	estas	this/these (near the speaker)
esse	essa	esses	essas	that/those (near the hearer)
aquele	aquela	aqueles	aquelas	that/those (far from both)

Este é o meu amigo Henrique.

This is my friend Henrique.

Pode passar-me esse livro, por favor?

Can you pass me that book, please?

Aquele restaurante é muito bom.

That restaurant is very good.

5.3.1 In Portuguese, there are also neuter demonstrative pronouns. They are invariable and are used when the speaker cannot or will not identify an object precisely:

isto	this (near the speaker)
isso	that (near the hearer)
aquilo	that (far from both)

O que é isto?

What is this?

Isso é impossível!

That is impossible!

Aquilo deve ser um disco-voador.

That must be a flying saucer.

5.3.2 Demonstratives can be combined with the prepositions **de**, **em** and **a**:

de + este	=	deste	em + este	=	neste
de + esta	=	desta	em + esta	=	nesta
de + estes	=	destes	em + estes	=	nestes
de + estas	=	destas	em + estas	=	nestas
de + esse	=	desse	em + esse	=	nesse
de + essa	=	dessa	em + essa	=	nessa
de + esses	=	desses	em + esses	=	nesses
de + esas	=	dessas	em + essas	=	nessas
de + aquele	=	daquele	em + aquele	=	naquele
de + aquela	=	daquela	em + aquela	=	naquela
de + aqueles	=	daqueles	em + aqueles	=	naqueles
de + aquelas	=	daquelas	em + aquelas	=	naquelas
a + aquele	=	àquele			
a + aquela	=	àquela			
a + aqueles	=	àqueles			
a + aquelas	=	àquelas			

Não gosto deste vinho.

I don't like this wine.

O que é que tens nessas caixas?

What do you have in those boxes?

Nunca fui àquele cinema.

I have never been to that cinema.

5.3.3 Neuter demonstrative pronouns also contract with the same prepositions as above:

de + isto	=	disto	em + isto	=	nisto
de + isso	=	disso	em + isso	=	nisso
de + aquilo	=	daquilo	em + aquilo	=	naquilo
a + aquilo	=	àquilo			

5.3.4 Agreement of demonstratives

Demonstratives used adjectivally agree in gender and number with the noun they precede. When qualifying more than one noun, they agree with the nearest:

este homem	this man
esta mulher	this woman
esses homens e mulheres	those men and women
aquelas mulheres e homens	those women and men

5.4 Relative pronouns

5.4.1

que
who, whom, which, that

o que, a que, os que, as que
the one that/who, the ones that/who, what

These are the most frequently used relative pronouns. They can refer to either people or things and may be used as the subject or object of a verb:

Aquela rapariga que falou contigo na festa é minha prima.

That girl *who* spoke to you at the party is my cousin.

O rapaz que vi esta manhã anda na minha turma.

The boy *whom* I saw this morning is in my class.

Esse livro é o que eu te comprei?

Is that book *the one (that)* I bought you?

Aquelas senhoras são as que me disseram para vir.

Those ladies are *the ones who* told me to come.

Isso foi o que ele disse!

That's *what* he said!

Note: In Portuguese, relative pronouns cannot be omitted as they sometimes can in English.

5.4.2

quem who, whom, the one/the ones who

- (a) **Quem** can be used instead of **que** when the verb **ser** introduces the subordinate clause (but **que** is also acceptable). In these cases, the pronoun **quem** takes the verb in the third person singular:

Foste tu quem contou o meu segredo!

Foste tu que contaste o meu segredo!

It was you *who* revealed my secret!

- (b) **Quem** is used when referring to a person and follows a preposition such as: **com**, **a**, **contra**, **entre**, **excepto**^B, **para**, **perante**, **por**, **salvo**, **segundo**, **sob**, **sobre**:

O rapaz com quem falei é de Lisboa.

The boy *whom* I talked to is from Lisbon.

Perante quem fizeste tal afirmação?

Before *whom* did you make such a statement?

Eles preferem trabalhar para quem paga melhor salário.

They prefer to work for the ones [those] who pay a better salary.

^B Exceto in Brazilian Portuguese.

5.4.3

onde where, in which

Refers to places:

Fui à casa onde viveu José Régio.

I went to the house *where* José Régio lived.

It may have some variations:

aonde where **donde** from where, from which

A casa aonde vais pertenceu a José Régio.

The house you are going to belonged to José Régio.

A universidade donde vens é famosa.

The university *where* you are *from* is famous.

5.4.4

o qual, a qual, os quais, as quais who, whom, which, that

Refers to people or things. It is preceded by a noun with which it agrees in gender and number (it can be used to replace the relative pronouns **que** and **quem**, in order to make the sentence clearer):

Os nossos vizinhos com os quais nos damos há anos, também vão.

Our neighbours, *whom* we have got on with for years, are also going.

Note: It is mainly used in written language; in colloquial Portuguese the sentence would be:

Os nossos vizinhos com quem nos damos há anos, também vão.

5.4.5

cujo, cuja, cujos, cujas whose, of whom, of which

This pronoun implies ownership. It can also refer to people or things and is followed by a noun with which it agrees in gender and number:

Este é o homem cujo carro foi roubado.

This is the man *whose* car was stolen.

É esta a camisa cujos botões se perderam?

Is this the shirt the buttons *of which* have been lost?

5.4.6

quanto, quanta, quantos, quantas

all that/who, everything that, everyone who

This pronoun is normally preceded by the indefinite pronouns **tudo; todo, toda, todos, todas**:

Isto é tudo quanto sei.This is *all (that)* I know.**Todos quantos viram o acidente afirmaram ter sido por excesso de velocidade.**All *who* saw the accident blamed it on excess speed.

5.5 Interrogative pronouns

5.5.1

que, o que

what, which

Que queres?**O que queres?**

What do you want?

Que é uma bica?**O que é uma bica?**

What is a 'bica'?

Que cor preferes?

Which colour do you prefer?

5.5.2

quem

who

a quem

to whom

de quem

whose

Quem é aquele?

Who is that?

A quem ofereceste o colar?

To whom did you give the necklace?

De quem é aquele carro?

Whose car is that?

5.5.3**qual, quais**

what, which (one)

Qual é o nome desta estação?

What is the name of this station?

Quais destas malas são as suas?

Which of these suitcases are yours?

Note: **Qual** expresses more clearly the idea of choice from a limited number of things than **que**. The main difference between these two interrogative pronouns is that **que** is usually followed by a noun but **qual** never is:

Que cor preferes?

What colour do you prefer?

Qual é a tua cor preferida?

Which is your favourite colour?

5.5.4**quanto, quanta, quantos, quantas** how much, how many**Quanto custa este vestido?**

How much is this dress?

Quantas laranjas comeste?

How many oranges did you eat?

5.5.5

É **que** is often added to the interrogative pronouns to give emphasis:

O que é *que* queres?**Quem é *que* é aquele?****A quem é *que* ofereceste o colar?****De quem é *que* é aquele carro?****Qual é *que* é a tua cor preferida?****Quanto é *que* custa este vestido?****5.5.6**

As well as these interrogative pronouns, some adverbs are also used to ask questions:

(a) **como** 'how':**Como está?**

How are you?

- (b) **onde** 'where':
Onde fica a casa-de-banho? Where is the toilet?
- (c) **porque, porquê** 'why':
Porque não vens? Porquê? Why aren't you coming? Why?
Porque é que não vens?

Note: Do not mistake it for *por que* (preposition *por* + pronoun):

Por que razão não vens?

For what reason (why) are you not coming?

Por que caminho seguiste?

Which route did you follow?

5.6 Indefinite pronouns and adjectives

algo	something
alguém	someone
certo, certa, certos, certas	certain
tal, tais	such
cada	each
vários, várias	various
bastante, bastantes	a lot
muito, muita, muitos, muitas	many
todo, toda, todos, todas	all, the whole of
tudo	everything
pouco, pouca, poucos, poucas	few
nenhum, nenhuma, nenhuns, nenhuma	none
ninguém	no one
nada	nothing

Indefinite pronouns and adjectives refer to an undetermined third person or thing:

Há algo de errado com o carro.

There is *something* wrong with the car.

Não há *nada* de errado.

No, there is *nothing* wrong with it.

Alguém viu o Pedro?

Has *anyone* seen Pedro?

Não, *ninguém* o viu.

No, *no one* has seen him.

Perdi os meus livros. *Viste algum?*

I've lost my books. Have you seen *any* of them?

Não, não vi *nenhum*.

No, I haven't seen *any*.

Tenho *muitos* amigos portugueses e *bastantes* amigos franceses, mas tenho *poucos* amigos russos.

I have *many* Portuguese friends and *quite a few* French friends but I have *few* Russian friends.

***Certos* carros são muito caros, mas não *todos*.**¹

Some cars are very expensive but not *all*.

Ele pensa que sabe *tudo*,² mas não sabe *nada*.

He thinks he knows *everything* but he knows *nothing*.

Ele adormece em *qualquer* lugar.

He falls asleep in *any* place.

Estes bolos custam dois euros *cada*, mas se comprares *vários* fica mais barato.

These cakes cost two euros *each* but if you buy *several* it's cheaper.

No *outro* dia fui ao teatro.

I went to the theatre the *other* day.

Não podemos aceitar *tal* coisa.

We cannot accept *such* a thing.

***Tais* pessoas só gostam de boatos.**

Such people only enjoy gossip.

¹ *Todo* agrees in gender and number with the noun it accompanies (*todo, toda, todos, todas*) and means 'all' in the sense of 'entire' or 'whole of'. It never precedes *isto, isso, aquilo*.

Comi o bolo *todo*. I ate the whole cake.

² *Tudo* is invariable and means 'everything'. It is never used before a noun, but can precede *isto, isso, aquilo*.

Ele já sabia *tudo* isso.

He already knew all that.

Comi *tudo* o que estava na mesa.

I ate everything on the table.

Numerals

6.1 Cardinal, ordinal and multiplicative numbers

	<i>Cardinal</i>	<i>Ordinal</i>	<i>Multiplicative Augmentative¹</i>	<i>Diminutive</i>
0	zero			
1	um/uma	primeiro/a		
2	dois/duas	segundo/a	duplo/a, dobro	meio
3	três	terceiro/a	triplo/a	terço
4	quatro	quarto/a	quádruplo/a	quarto
5	cinco	quinto/a	quíntuplo/a	quinto
6	seis	sexto/a	sextuplo/a	sexto
7	sete	sétimo/a	septuplo/a	sétimo
8	oito	oitavo/a	octuplo/a	oitavo
9	nove	nono/a	nonuplo/a	nono
10	dez	décimo/a	décuplo/a	décimo
11	onze	décimo/a primeiro/a		onze avos
12	doze	décimo/a segundo/a		doze avos
13	treze	décimo/a terceiro/a		etc.
14	catorze ^B	décimo/a quarto/a		
15	quinze	décimo/a quinto/a		
16	dezasseis ^B	décimo/a sexto/a		
17	dezassete ^B	décimo/a sétimo/a		

18	dezoito	décimo/a oitavo/a	
19	dezanove ^B	décimo/a nono/a	
20	vinte	vigésimo/a	
21	vinte e um/uma	vigésimo/a primeiro/a	
22	vinte e dois/duas	vigésimo/a segundo/a	
23	vinte e três	vigésimo/a terceiro/a	
30	trinta	trigésimo/a	
40	quarenta	quadragésimo/a	
50	cinquenta	quingentésimo/a	
60	sessenta	sexagésimo/a	
70	setenta	septuagésimo/a	
80	oitenta	octogésimo/a	
90	noventa	nonagésimo/a	
100	cem	centésimo/a	cêntuplo/a
101	cento e um/uma	centésimo/a primeiro/a	
200	duzentos/as	ducentésimo/a	
300	trezentos/as	tricentésimo/a	
400	quatrocentos/as	quadringentésimo/a	
500	quinhentos/as	quingentésimo/a	
600	seiscentos/as	sexcentésimo/a	
700	setecentos/as	septingentésimo/a	
800	oitocentos/as	octingentésimo/a	
900	novecentos/as	nongentésimo/a	
1,000	mil	milésimo/a	
1,000,000	um milhão	milionésimo/a	
1,000,000,000	um bilhão	bilionésimo/a	
	um bilião		

¹ Often, instead of a multiplicative augmentative number, it is preferable to use the expression *vezes mais*:

Este valor é 25 vezes mais alto/baixo do que o anterior.

This amount is 25 times higher/lower than the previous one.

6.2 Collective numerals

um par 'a pair'	= 2
uma meia dúzia 'half a dozen'	= 6
uma dezena	= 10
uma dúzia 'a dozen'	= 12
uma centena	= 100
um cento	= 100
uma grossa 'a gross'	= 144 (12 × 12)
um milhar	= 1,000

6.3 Use of the conjunction e with numerals

35	trinta e cinco
349	trezentos e quarenta e nove
1,892	mil (–) oitocentos e noventa e dois
2,349	dois mil (–) trezentos e quarenta e nove

But

1,800	mil e oitocentos
1,700	mil e setecentos
2,100	dois mil e cem

Reading a long number is like making an enumeration where the last two elements are linked by the conjunction **e**. The **e** which is part of the tens group does not count.

Note: After 110,000, the number is read in groups of three figures:

293,272 duzentos e noventa e três mil (–) duzentos e setenta e dois

Note: Where numbers have been given in figures in this chapter they have been written in the English style. In Portuguese, however, the decimal point is replaced by a decimal comma. A point is used to separate the thousands:

<i>Portuguese</i>	<i>English</i>
2,5 kg = 2.500 g	2.5 kg = 2,500 g
35,6 km = 35.600 m	35.6 km = 35,600 m

Roman numerals are used in Portuguese to refer to centuries and in monarchs' and popes' names. When reading them, use an ordinal up to and including IX and a cardinal from X onwards.

No século VIII (oitavo) os Árabes invadiram a Península Ibérica.

In the eighth century the Arabs invaded the Iberian Peninsula.

D. João I (primeiro) foi o fundador da segunda dinastia em finais do séc. XIV (século catorze).

King João I was the founder of the second Portuguese dynasty at the end of the fourteenth century.

João XXI (vinte e um) foi um papa português.

John XXI was a Portuguese pope.

Chapter 7

Verbs^B

7.1 Moods and tenses

The following shows all possible moods and tenses of the first person singular of the regular -ar verb **estudar**. It is intended for reference only; the following pages give full conjugations for all tenses.

Indicative mood

Present tenses	Present	estudo
	Present Perfect	tenho estudado
Past tenses	Imperfect	estudava
	Preterite	estudei
	Past Perfect	tinha estudado
	Pluperfect	estudara
Future tenses	Future	estudarei
	Future Perfect	terei estudado
	Conditional	estudaria
	Conditional Perfect	teria estudado

Subjunctive mood

Present tenses	Present	estude
	Present Perfect	tenha estudado
Past tenses	Past	estudasse
	Past Perfect	tivesse estudado
Future tenses	Future	estudar
	Future Perfect	tiver estudado

Imperative mood

estuda (tu)
estude (você)
estudemos (nós)
estudai (vós)
estudem (vocês)
estudar
ter estudado
estudando
tendo estudado
estudado

Indicative
mood

Infinitive

Compound Infinitive

Present Participle (gerund)

Compound Present Participle

Past Participle

In Portuguese there are four main groups of verbs:

- (a) 1st conjugation: all verbs with Infinitives ending in **-ar**;
- (b) 2nd conjugation: all verbs with Infinitives ending in **-er**;
- (c) 3rd conjugation: all verbs with Infinitives ending in **-ir**;
- (d) 4th conjugation: all derivatives of the verb **pôr**.

To form the simple tenses of regular verbs, remove the ending of the Infinitive (**-ar**, **-er**, **-ir**, **-or**). Add the endings shown below to the stem of the verb, for example:

estudar = estudo (first person singular of the Present Indicative)

The compound tenses of regular verbs are formed by the auxiliary verb **ter** (in the appropriate person) + Past Participle of the main verb, for example:

ter estudado = tenho estudado
(first person singular of the Present Perfect Indicative)

7.2 Indicative mood

7.2.1 Present

7.2.1.1 Meanings

(a) Action in the present:

Que fazes? *What are you doing?*

Leio o jornal. *I am reading the paper.*

(b) Habitual or repetitive action in the present:

Ela *viaja* muito.

She *travels* a lot.

Eu *chego* sempre às nove da manhã.

I always *arrive* at 9 a.m.

(c) Universal statement:

Dois mais dois são quatro.

Two and two *are* four.

O sol quando *nasce* é para todos.

When the sun *rises* it is for everyone.

(d) Replacing the Future tense:

Eu *vou* ao cinema amanhã.

I *am going* to the cinema tomorrow.

(e) Historical Present:

Em 1500 Pedro Álvares Cabral *descobre* o Brasil.

In 1500 Pedro Álvares Cabral *discovers* Brazil.

7.2.1.2 Conjugation

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
	'to sing'	'to sell'	'to leave'	'to put'
eu	canto	vendo	parto	ponho
tu	cantas	vendes	partes	pões
ele, ela, você	canta	vende	parte	põe
nós	cantamos	vendemos	partimos	pomos
(vós)	cantais	vendeis	partis	pondeis
eles, elas, vocês	cantam	vendem	partem	põem

Note: If the stem vowel in **-ir** verbs is an **e** or an **o**, it becomes **i** or **u** respectively in the first person singular:

e to i		o to u	
despir	eu <i>dispo</i>	cobrir	eu <i>ubro</i>
mentir	eu <i>minto</i>	dormir	eu <i>durmo</i>
preferir	eu <i>prefiro</i>	tossir	eu <i>tusso</i>
repetir	eu <i>repito</i>		
seguir	eu <i>sigo</i>		
servir	eu <i>sirvo</i>		
vestir	eu <i>visto</i>		

Note: If the stem of the **-ar** verb ends in **-c**, **-ç** or **-g**, these consonants change into **-qu**, **-c** or **-gu** respectively when they are followed by an **-e**, in order to preserve the original consonant sound of the stem:

ficar	eu <i>fiquei</i>
coçar	eu <i>cocei</i>
chegar	eu <i>cheguei</i>

Note: If the stem of an **-er** or **-ir** verb ends in **-c**, **-g** or **-gu**, these consonants change into **-ç** and **-j** or **-g** respectively when they are followed by an **-o** or an **-a**, also to preserve the original consonant sound of the stem:

vencer	eu <i>venço</i>
fugir	eu <i>fujo</i>
erguer	eu <i>ergo</i>

7.2.1.3 Irregular present

<i>ser</i>	sou, és, é, somos, sois, são
<i>estar</i>	estou, estás, está, estamos, estais, estão
<i>ter</i>	tenho, tens, tem, temos, tendes, têm
<i>haver</i> ¹	há
<i>dar</i>	dou, dás, dá, damos, dais, dão

<i>ir</i>	vou, vais, vai, vamos, ides, vão
<i>vir</i>	venho, vens, vem, vimos, vindes, vêm
<i>ver</i>	vejo, vês, vê, vemos, vedes, vêem
<i>dizer</i>	digo, dizes, diz, dizemos, dizeis, dizem
<i>fazer</i>	faço, fazes, faz, fazemos, fazeis, fazem
<i>trazer</i>	trago, trazes, traz, trazemos, trazeis, trazem
<i>ouvir</i>	ouço, ouves, ouve, ouvimos, ouvis, ouvem
<i>pedir</i>	peço, pedes, pede, pedimos, pedis, pedem
<i>medir</i>	meço, medes, mede, medimos, medis, medem
<i>saber</i>	sei, sabes, sabe, sabemos, sabeis, sabem

¹ **Haver** can only be used in the third person singular:

Há muitas crianças pobres. There are many poor children.

Haver-de, however, can be used as an auxiliary verb expressing the intention of doing something in the future:

Hei-de ler o livro que me recomendaste.

I shall read the book you recommended.

7.2.2 Present Perfect

7.2.2.1 Meanings

Note that this tense is called ‘Present Perfect’ and not ‘Perfect’ in Portuguese. Whereas in English this tense is more of an aspect or refers to a state of completion following an action, in Portuguese it has the function of a progressive tense describing an action or a process going on over some length of time.

(a) Action which started in the past and has been developing over a period of time, and which may or may not continue into the future:

Eu tenho estudado muito. *I have been studying very hard.*

(b) Continuity:

Ultimamente tenho-me interessado pela política internacional.

Lately I have been interested in international politics.

(c) Repetition:

Eu tenho ido ao teatro. I have been going to the theatre.

But the only exception is **tenho dito**, a formula used for closing a speech. In this exceptional case, the Portuguese Present Perfect expresses a fully completed action in the moment that has just passed, when the speech was finished.

7.2.2.2 Conjugation (Present of **ter** + past participle of the verb)

		cantar	vender	partir	pôr	
eu	<i>tenho</i>	}	cantado	vendido	partido	posto
tu	<i>tens</i>					
ele, ela, você	<i>tem</i>					
nós	<i>temos</i>					
(vós)	<i>tendes</i>					
eles, elas, vocês	<i>têm</i>					

7.2.3 Imperfect

7.2.3.1 Meanings

(a) Past action of a certain duration:

Quando a minha avó era nova não havia televisão.
When my grandmother was young there was no television.

(b) Frequency or habit:

Todas as manhãs eu ia de autocarro para a escola.
Every morning I used to go by bus to school.

(c) Two simultaneous actions:

Enquanto ele lia o jornal, ela preparava o jantar.
While he read the paper, she made the dinner.

- (d) When describing background action and an incident, the background action is always expressed in the Imperfect:

Eu dormia quando tu chegaste.

I was sleeping when you arrived.

Note: The progressive form *estar a* + infinitive can also describe a background action in the past:

Eu estava a dormir quando tu chegaste.

I was sleeping when you arrived.

instead of

Eu dormia quando tu chegaste.

- (e) Polite request (in the sense of ‘would’ or ‘could’):

Podia-me dizer as horas, por favor?

Could you tell me the time, please?

- (f) Replacing the Conditional tense:

Se eu tivesse muito dinheiro, comprava um iate.

If I had a lot of money, I would buy a yacht.

7.2.3.2 Conjugation

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
eu	cantava	vendia	partia	punha
tu	cantavas	vendias	partias	punhas
ele, ela, você	cantava	vendia	partia	punha
nós	cantávamos	vendíamos	partíamos	púnhamos
(vós)	cantáveis	vendíeis	partíeis	púnheis
eles, elas, vocês	cantavam	vendiam	partiam	punham

7.2.3.3 Irregular imperfect

ser era, eras, era, éramos, éreis, eram

ter tinha, tinhas, tinha, tínhamos, tínheis, tinham

vir vinha, vinhas, vinha, vínhamos, vínheis, vinham

7.2.4 Preterite**7.2.4.1 Meanings**

(a) Completed action in the past:

Eu estudei português no ano passado.

I *studied* Portuguese last year.

(b) When describing background action and an incident, the Preterite is always used to express the incident:

Eu dormia quando tu chegaste.

I was sleeping when you *arrived*.

7.2.4.2 Conjugation

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
eu	cantei	vendi	parti	pus
tu	cantaste	vendeste	partiste	puseste
ele, ela, você	cantou	vendeu	partiu	pôs
nós	cantámos	vendemos	partimos	pusemos
(vós)	cantastes	vendestes	partistes	pusestes
eles, elas, vocês	cantaram	venderam	partiram	puseram

7.2.4.3 Irregular preterite

ser fui, foste, foi, fomos, fostes, foram

estar estive, estiveste, estive, estivemos, estivestes, estiveram

ter tive, tiveste, teve, tivemos, tivestes, tiveram

haver houve

dar dei, deste, deu, demos, destes, deram

ir fui, foste, foi, fomos, fostes, foram

vir vim, vieste, veio, viemos, viestes, vieram

<i>ver</i>	vi, viste, viu, vimos, vistas, viram
<i>dizer</i>	disse, disseste, disse, dissemos, dissestes, disseram
<i>fazer</i>	fiz, fizeste, fez, fizemos, fizestes, fizeram
<i>querer</i>	quis, quiseste, quis, quisemos, quisestes, quiseram
<i>saber</i>	soube, soubeste, soube, soubemos, soubestes, souberam
<i>trazer</i>	trouxe, trouxe, trouxe, trouxemos, trouxe, trouxeram

7.2.4.4 Differences between the Preterite and the Present Perfect

In English we can use either the Simple Past or the Present Perfect to express a completed action in the past:

Yesterday I *studied* hard.

I have *studied* hard.

In Portuguese, only the *Preterite* expresses a fully completed action in the past. The *Present Perfect* expresses an action which began in the past, has been developing over a period of time and may or may not continue into the future (see 7.2.2.1):

Eu encontrei a Teresa na biblioteca.

I met Teresa in the library/I have met Teresa in the library.

Eu tenho encontrado a Teresa na biblioteca.

I have been meeting Teresa in the library (and I may still continue meeting her in the library).

7.2.4.5 Differences between Preterite and Imperfect

- (a) The *Preterite* expresses a past action limited by time while the Imperfect expresses a past action with a certain duration and not limited in time:

Ontem a Carla levantou-se às oito horas.

Yesterday Carla got up at eight o'clock.

Dantes a Carla levantava-se às oito horas.

Carla used to get up at eight o'clock.

- (b) The *Preterite* is used to express a single event, while the Imperfect expresses an habitual action:

Quando vi o teu pai, perguntei-lhe por ti.

When I saw your father I asked (him) about you.

Quando via o teu pai, perguntava-lhe por ti.

Whenever I saw your father I *would* ask (him) about you.

7.2.5 Past Perfect and Pluperfect

7.2.5.1 Meanings

(a) Past action prior to another action in the past:

Eu *tinha* saído quando ela chegou.

I *had left* when she arrived.

Note: The Pluperfect is almost exclusively used in literary language. In colloquial Portuguese, the Past Perfect is used instead:

O livro *tinha-se* tornado tão enfadonho que adormeci.

The book *had become* so boring that I fell asleep.

instead of

O livro *tornara-se* tão enfadonho que adormeci.

7.2.5.2 Conjugation

		cantar	vender	partir	pôr	
<i>Past Perfect</i>						
eu	<i>tinha</i>	}	cantado	vendido	partido	posto
tu	<i>tinhas</i>					
ele, ela, você	<i>tinha</i>					
nós	<i>tínhamos</i>					
(vós)	<i>tínheis</i>					
eles, elas, vocês	<i>tinham</i>					

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
<i>Pluperfect</i>				
eu	cantara	vendera	partira	pusera
tu	cantaras	venderas	partiras	puseras
ele, ela, você	cantara	vendera	partira	pusera
nós	cantáramos	vendêramos	partíramos	puséramos
(vós)	cantáreis	vendêreis	partíreis	puséreis
eles, elas, vocês	cantaram	venderam	partiram	puseram

7.2.5.3 Irregular pluperfect

<i>ser</i>	fora, foras, fora, fôramos, fôreis, foram
<i>dar</i>	dera, deras, dera, déramos, déreis, deram
<i>ir</i>	fora, foras, fora, fôramos, fôreis, foram
<i>vir</i>	viera, vieras, viera, viéramos, viéreis, vieram
<i>fazer</i>	fizera, fizeras, fizera, fizéramos, fizéreis, fizeram

7.2.6 Future

7.2.6.1 Meanings

(a) Future action, either definite or most probable:

Amanhã telefonarei à Isabel.

I will phone Isabel tomorrow.

(b) Uncertainty about present facts, usually expressed through a question:

Será que está a chover?

Do you think it is raining?

Bateram à porta. Será o Filipe?

Someone has knocked at the door. *Do you think it is Filipe?*

Note: The Future is usually reserved for formal language, especially rules, regulations and legislation. In colloquial Portuguese it is replaced by the Present or the Present of *ir* + infinitive of the verb:

Amanhã telefono à Isabel.

I'll phone Isabel tomorrow.

Amanhã vou telefonar à Isabel.

I'm going to phone Isabel tomorrow.

instead of

Amanhã telefonarei à Isabel.

7.2.6.2 Conjugation

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
eu	cantarei	venderei	partirei	porei
tu	cantarás	venderás	partirás	porás
ele, ela, você	cantará	venderá	partirá	porá
nós	cantaremos	venderemos	partiremos	poremos
(vós)	cantareis	vendereis	partireis	poreis
eles, elas, vocês	cantarão	venderão	partirão	porão

7.2.6.3 Irregular future

dizer direi, dirás, dirá, diremos, direis, dirão

fazer farei, farás, fará, faremos, fareis, farão

trazer trarei, trarás, trará, traremos, trareis, trarão

7.2.7 Future perfect

7.2.7.1 Meanings

(a) Future action prior to another action in the future:

Quando eles chegarem, já nós teremos almoçado.

When they arrive, we *will have had* our lunch.

(b) Uncertainty about past facts, usually expressed through a question:

Já terá passado a chuva? *Will it have stopped raining?*

Quem terá partido este copo? *Who might have broken this glass?*

7.2.7.2 Conjugation

		cantar	vender	partir	pôr	
eu	<i>terei</i>	}	cantado	vendido	partido	posto
tu	<i>terás</i>					
ele, ela, você	<i>terá</i>					
nós	<i>teremos</i>					
(vós)	<i>tereis</i>					
eles, elas, vocês	<i>terão</i>					

7.2.8 Conditional

7.2.8.1 Meanings

(a) Uncertainty about past facts:

Quem seria aquele homem de chapéu preto?

Who could that man in the black hat be?

(b) Polite request implying wishing:

Gostaria que me desse a sua opinião sobre este assunto.

I would like you to give me your opinion on this matter.

(c) Condition of a fact that probably will not happen:

Se eu tivesse tempo, iria à praia.

If I had the time, I would go to the beach.

Note: The Conditional is usually replaced by the Imperfect in spoken or less formal written language:

Se eu tivesse tempo, ia à praia.

If I had the time, I would go to the beach.

instead of

Se eu tivesse tempo, iria à praia.

Indicative
mood

7.2.8.2 Conjugation

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
eu	cantaria	venderia	partiria	poria
tu	cantarias	venderias	partirias	porias
ele, ela, você	cantaria	venderia	partiria	poria
nós	cantaríamos	venderíamos	partiríamos	poríamos
(vós)	cantaríeis	venderíeis	partiríeis	poríeis
eles, elas, vocês	cantariam	venderiam	partiriam	poriam

7.2.8.3 Irregular conditional: verbs ending in -zer:

dizer diria, dirias, diria, diríamos, diríeis, diriam

fazer faria, farias, faria, faríamos, faríeis, fariam

trazer traria, trarias, traria, traríamos, traríeis, trariam

7.2.9 Conditional perfect

7.2.9.1 Meanings

(a) Condition of a past action, which did not happen:

Eu teria tido uma boa nota se tivesse estudado.

I would have had a good mark if I had studied.

(b) Uncertainty about past facts:

Quem teria partido este copo?

Who could have broken this glass?

7.2.9.2 Conjugation

		cantar	vender	partir	pôr	
eu	teria	}	cantado	vendido	partido	posto
tu	terias					
ele, ela, você	teria					
nós	teríamos					
(vós)	teríeis					
eles, elas, vocês	teriam					

Note: If any object pronouns are used with the Future or Conditional they are placed between the stem and the ending of the verb and linked by hyphens:

Ela escrever-me-á uma carta. She will write *me* a letter.

Ela escrevê-la-ia a mim. She would write *it* to me.

(See 5.1.2.1 for word order and also 5.1.2.4 for variant forms of direct object pronouns.)

7.3 Subjunctive mood

The *Indicative mood* expresses real facts whereas the *Subjunctive mood* expresses facts which are uncertain, doubtful, eventual or even unreal:

Hoje vamos fazer um piquenique, por isso espero que não chova.

Today we are going for a picnic, so I hope it does not *rain*.

The use of the Subjunctive in Portuguese is far more frequent than in English. In English, the Subjunctive mood usually expresses a hypothetical situation. That is why it is often used in children's books where make-believe plays an important role in the child's imagination.

Example:

Jack slipped into the giant's room without making a noise, as if he were a little mouse.

João entrou no quarto do gigante sem fazer barulho, como se fosse um ratinho.

The tenses of the Subjunctive mood in Portuguese have regular conjugations, thus they should not present a problem for the foreign student/learner. There are set circumstances, verbs and phrases that require its use. Above all, remember that the Subjunctive in Portuguese is the mood that expresses *doubts* and *hypotheses*. It is also linked to the idea of *commands*, *wishing*, *feeling* and *necessity*. It normally appears in subordinate or dependent clauses.

The mnemonic below may help you remember when to use the Subjunctive in Portuguese:

W E I R D

W Wishes

E Emotion or feeling

I Imperatives and indirect commands

R Requests

D Doubt, uncertainty and hypotheses

The Subjunctive is used after the following verbs and expressions:

(a) Wishing:

oxalá	esperar que	querer que
tomara que	ser bom que/se	pedir que
Deus queira que		

(b) Emotion or feeling:

lamentar que	estar contente que
ser pena que/se	estar triste que
ser bom que/se	estar satisfeito que

(c) Imperatives and indirect commands:

The Imperative form is usually borrowed from the Subjunctive, except for the second person, **tu** and **vós**. It is also used after verbs that express an indirect command:

querer que	mandar que	requerer que
recomendar que	ordenar que	exigir que

(d) Requests:

desejar que **esperar que**

agradecer que **pedir que**

(e) Doubt, uncertainty or hypotheses:

duvidar que **pode ser que** **talvez**

não achar que **ser provável/improvável que** **se**

não parecer que **ser possível/impossível que** **caso**

(f) Necessity:

ser preciso que **ser necessário que** **ser importante que**

(g) Other conjunctions and adverbs:

embora **por muito que** **logo que**

mesmo que **por pouco que** **enquanto**

ainda que **quem quer que** **sempre que**

para que **onde quer que** **como se**

por mais que **o que quer que** **assim que**

por menos que **quando**

7.3.1 *Present subjunctive*

7.3.1.1 Meanings

(a) Actions referring to a present situation:

É pena que ela esteja doente. It is a pity that she is ill.

(b) Actions referring to a future situation:

Quando eu voltar, é bom que o teu quarto esteja arrumado!
When I get back, you'd better have your room tidy!

7.3.1.2 Conjugation

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
eu	cante	venda	parta	ponha
tu	cantes	vendas	partas	ponhas
ele, ela, você	cante	venda	parta	ponha
nós	cantemos	vendamos	partamos	ponhamos
(vós)	canteis	vendais	partais	ponhais
eles, elas, vocês	cantem	vendam	partam	ponham

7.3.1.3 Irregular present subjunctive

<i>ser</i>	seja, sejas, seja, sejamos, sejais, sejam
<i>estar</i>	esteja, estejam, esteja, estejamos, estejam, estejam
<i>haver</i>	haja
<i>dar</i>	dê, dês, dê, demos, deis, dêem
<i>ir</i>	vá, vás, vá, vamos, vades, vão
<i>querer</i>	queira, queira, queira, queiramos, queirais, queiram
<i>saber</i>	saiba, saibas, saiba, saibamos, saibais, saibam

7.3.2 Present perfect subjunctive

7.3.2.1 Meanings

(a) Actions referring to a past situation:

Espero que tenham feito uma boa viagem.

I hope you have had a good trip.

(b) Actions referring to a future situation:

É provável que às cinco horas tenhas acabado o exame.

You probably will have finished your exam by five o'clock.

7.3.2.2 Conjugation

		cantar	vender	partir	pôr	
eu	tenha	}	cantado	vendido	partido	posto
tu	tenhas					
ele, ela, você	tenha					
nós	tenhamos					
(vós)	tenhais					
eles, elas, vocês	tenham					

7.3.3 Past subjunctive or imperfect subjunctive

7.3.3.1 Meanings

The Past Subjunctive, also known as Imperfect Subjunctive, is always used in subordinate or dependent clauses. The verb in the main clause can be in the Imperfect Indicative or in the Preterite, and each instance changes the meaning of the sentence:

- (a) The Imperfect in the main clause is used for actions referring to a present or future situation, or even to a habitual situation in the past (as explained in 7.2.3.1):

Eu queria que me desse o livro que está na montra.

I would like you to give me the book in the window.¹

Eu queria que viesses almoçar comigo hoje ou amanhã.

I would like you to have lunch with me today or tomorrow.¹

Antigamente o meu pai pedia sempre que lhe comprasse o jornal.

In the past, my father always asked me to buy him the newspaper.

- (b) The Preterite is used for actions referring to a past situation:

Eu quis que viesses almoçar comigo ontem (mas tu não vieste).

I wanted you to come to lunch with me yesterday (but you did not come).¹

(c) The Past Subjunctive is also used to express a condition to a fact that probably will not happen. It can be used with the Conditional or the Imperfect:

Se eu tivesse dinheiro compraria/comprava um barco.
 If I *had* money I would buy a boat.

¹ Note how in (a) and (b) the Portuguese Past or Imperfect Subjunctive is translated by the Infinitive in English.

7.3.3.2 Conjugation

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
eu	cantasse	vendesse	partisse	pusesse
tu	cantasses	vendessem	partisses	pusesses
ele, ela, você	cantasse	vendesse	partisse	pusesse
nós	cantássemos	vendêssemos	partíssemos	puséssemos
(vós)	cantásseis	vendêsseis	partísseis	pusésseis
eles, elas, vocês	cantassem	vendessem	partissem	pusessem

7.3.4 Past perfect subjunctive

7.3.4.1 Meanings

(a) Past action prior to another past action:

Não acreditei que ele tivesse dito a verdade.
 I did not believe he *had told* the truth.

(b) Past condition to a past fact that did not happen:

Se tivesse tido muito dinheiro, teria comprado um avião.
 If I *had had* a lot of money, I would have bought a plane.

7.3.4.2 Conjugation

		cantar	vender	partir	pôr	
eu	tivesse	}	cantado	vendido	partido	posto
tu	tivesses					
ele, ela, você	tivesse					
nós	tivéssemos					
(vós)	tivésseis					
eles, elas, vocês	tivessem					

7.3.5 Future subjunctive

7.3.5.1 Meanings

Eventuality of a future action:

Vem-me ajudar, se pudes. Help me, if you can.¹

The Future Subjunctive is used after words referring to a future or uncertain action: *se, quando, enquanto, logo que, assim que, como*:

se quiseres	if you wish
quando quiseres	when you wish
enquanto quiseres	as long as you wish
logo que/assim que quiseres	as soon as you wish
como quiseres	as you wish

Note: In Portuguese, the translation of the English ‘whatever’, ‘whoever’, ‘whenever’ and ‘wherever’ is followed by the Future Subjunctive:

Podes fazer o que quiseres. You can do whatever you wish.¹

¹ Note how the Portuguese Future Subjunctive is translated by the Present Indicative in English.

7.3.5.2 Conjugation

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
eu	cantar	vender	partir	puser
tu	cantares	venderes	partires	puseres
ele, ela, você	cantar	vender	partir	puser
nós	cantarmos	vendermos	partirmos	pusermos
(vós)	cantardes	venderdes	partirdes	puserdes
eles, elas, vocês	cantarem	venderem	partirem	puserem

7.3.6 Future perfect subjunctive

7.3.6.1 Meaning

Future action prior to another action also in the future.¹ The Future Subjunctive follows the words *se*, *quando*, *logo que* and *assim que*:

Se tiveres terminado quando eu chegar, vamos juntos ao cinema.

If you have finished by the time I arrive, we will go to the cinema together.

Quando tiver acabado o curso vou para Itália.

When I have finished my degree I will go to Italy.

Logo que/assim que tiver vendido o carro antigo compro um novo.

As soon as I have sold my old car I will buy a new one

¹ Note how the Portuguese Future Perfect Subjunctive is usually translated by the Present Perfect in English.

7.3.6.2 Conjugation

		cantar	vender	partir	pôr	
eu	<i>tiver</i>	}	cantado	vendido	patido	posto
tu	<i>tiveres</i>					
ele, ela, você	<i>tiver</i>					
nós	<i>tivermos</i>					
(vós)	<i>tiverdes</i>					
eles, elas, vocês	<i>tiverem</i>					

7.4 Imperative mood

7.4.1 Conjugation^B

The Imperative mood expresses commands. In the affirmative, it has only three persons (**tu**, **nós**, **vós**). In all other cases, including the negative, commands are expressed by forms borrowed from the Present Subjunctive. It is presented here conjugated together with the borrowed forms of the Present Subjunctive (in parentheses) for easier consultation:

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
<i>Affirmative</i>				
eu	–	–	–	–
tu	<i>canta</i>	<i>vende</i>	<i>parte</i>	<i>põe</i>
você	(<i>cante</i>)	(<i>venda</i>)	(<i>parta</i>)	(<i>ponha</i>)
nós	<i>cantemos</i>	<i>vendamos</i>	<i>partamos</i>	<i>ponhamos</i>
(vós)	<i>cantai</i>	<i>vendei</i>	<i>parti</i>	<i>ponde</i>
vocês	(<i>cantem</i>)	(<i>vendam</i>)	(<i>partam</i>)	(<i>ponham</i>)

Negative					
eu	<i>não</i>	–	–	–	–
tu	<i>não</i>	(cantes)	(vendas)	(partas)	(ponhas)
você	<i>não</i>	(cante)	(venda)	(parta)	(ponha)
nós	<i>não</i>	(cantemos)	(vendamos)	(partamos)	(ponhamos)
(vós)	<i>não</i>	(canteis)	(vendais)	(partais)	(ponhais)
vocês	<i>não</i>	(cantem)	(vendam)	(partam)	(ponham)

7.4.2 Irregular imperative

- ser* *sê, sejam*, sede
- estar* *está, estejam*, estai
- ir* *vai, vamos*, ide
- dar* *dá, demos*, dai
- dizer* *diz, digamos*, digam
- ler* *lê, leiamos*, lede
- ver* *vê, vejamos*, vede
- fazer* *faz, façamos*, fazei
- trazer* *traz, tragamos*, trazei
- saber* *sabe, saibamos*, saibam

7.5 Infinitive

7.5.1 Impersonal infinitive

The Impersonal Infinitive in the four conjugations ends in *-ar*, *-er*, *-ir* or *-or*:

cantar	vender	partir	pôr
---------------	---------------	---------------	------------

7.5.2 *Personal infinitive*

	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
eu	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
tu	cantares	venderes	partires	pores
ele, ela, você	cantar	vender	partir	pôr
nós	cantarmos	vendermos	partirmos	pormos
(vós)	cantardes	venderdes	partirdes	pordes
eles, elas, vocês	cantarem	venderem	partirem	porem

Note: With regular verbs, the Personal Infinitive and the Future Subjunctive happen to have the same forms. This is not the case with irregular verbs (e.g. *fazer*: *tu fazeres/tu fizeres*).

7.5.3 Although we can often use either the Impersonal or the Personal Infinitive, the latter is preferred when indicating more clearly the person to whom the Infinitive refers. Especially after *ao* ('when; on doing something') and *para* ('for; in order to'), the Personal Infinitive is used to avoid ambiguity:

Ao abrir a porta, eles viram-me.

On opening the door they saw me. (Who *opened* the door – did they or did I?)

Ao abrirem a porta, eles viram-me.

When *they opened* the door, they saw me.

Isto é para traduzir hoje.

This is to be translated today. (Who has to *translate* it today?)

Isto é para traduzires hoje.

This is for you to *translate* today.

7.5.4 In colloquial Portuguese, the Personal Infinitive replaces a subjunctive clause in the following situations:

para que + Subjunctive = **para** + Personal Infinitive
sem que + Subjunctive = **sem** + Personal Infinitive

Vim falar contigo para que me dê um conselho.

Vim falar contigo para me dares um conselho.

I came to talk to you for some advice.

Nós saímos sem que eles vissem.

Nós saímos sem eles verem.

We left without being seen (by them).

7.6 Present participle

cantar	vender	partir	pôr
cantando	vendendo	partindo	pondo

The Present Participle is used in Brazilian Portuguese to express the Progressive tenses. In European Portuguese, *estar a/andar a* + Infinitive is preferred:

Eu estou a trabalhar. I am working.

Eu ando a estudar português. I am studying Portuguese.

instead of

Estou trabalhando.

Estou estudando português.

But when the English 'to be + -ing' is used to express a future action, it cannot be translated with the Portuguese Progressive. The simple Present tense is used instead:

Ele parte amanhã. He is leaving tomorrow.

Eles ficam três dias. They are staying three days.

Note: Contrary to English usage, the Portuguese gerund cannot act as a noun. Where English uses the '-ing' form, Portuguese uses an Infinitive:

Viajar de avião é caro. Travelling by plane is expensive.

7.7 Compound infinitive and compound present participle

Compound Infinitive	ter + Past Participle (‘having’ + Past Participle)
Compound Present Participle	tendo + Past Participle (‘having’ + Past Participle)

The Compound Infinitive is normally used after a preposition (**de**, **para**, **por**), while the Compound Present Participle never follows a preposition:

Depois de ter terminado o curso, a Isabel voltou para Portugal.

After *having finished* her degree, Isabel returned to Portugal.

Tendo terminado o curso, a Isabel voltou para Portugal.

Having finished her degree, Isabel returned to Portugal.

7.8 Past participle

cantar	vender	partir	pôr
cantado	vendido	partido	posto

7.8.1 Irregular past participle

A few verbs have an irregular Past Participle:

<i>abrir</i>	aberto	<i>fazer</i>	feito
<i>cobrir</i>	coberto	<i>pagar</i>	pagado
<i>dizer</i>	dito	<i>ver</i>	visto
<i>escrever</i>	escrito	<i>vir</i>	vindo

Note: Some verbs have two Past Participles, one regular and one irregular. The regular form is used when the auxiliary verb is **ter** or **haver**, and the irregular form when the auxiliary verb is **ser** or **estar**:

	<i>ter/haver</i>	<i>ser/estar</i>	
aceitar	aceitado	aceito/aceite	to accept
entregar	entregado	entregue	to hand over; to deliver
expulsar	expulsado	expulso	to expel
matar	matado	morto	to kill
salvar	salvado	salvo	to save
soltar	soltado	solto	to release
acender	acendido	aceso	to light; to switch on
eleger	elegido	eleito	to elect
morrer	morrido	morto	to die
prender	prendido	preso	to arrest
romper	rompido	roto	to tear
suspender	suspendido	suspenso	to hang
exprimir	exprimido	expresso	to express
extinguir	extinguido	extinto	to extinguish
imprimir	imprimido	impresso	to print

7.9 Passive voice

ser (in required tense) + Past Participle + **por**
to be + Past Participle + by

7.9.1 The Passive Voice in Portuguese is not too different from its use in English.

But in Portuguese, the Past Participle agrees in gender and in number with the subject of the passive sentence, and the preposition **por** contracts with the definite articles **o, a, os, as**: **pelo, pela, pelos, pelas**:

Os bombeiros apagam incêndios.

Firefighters *put out* fires.

Os incêndios são apagados pelos bombeiros.

Fires are put out by firefighters.

Note: In the Passive Voice sentence:

- The direct object became the subject.
- The subject became the agent of the action introduced by the preposition **por**.
- The past participle agrees in gender and number with the subject.

7.9.2 The Passive Voice can be used in all tenses. In principle, all sentences in the Active Voice can be replaced by an equivalent with the verb in the Passive Voice. The preference is determined by matters of style and emphasis, just like in English. For that reason, some of the examples below may seem somewhat strange to a native speaker. They are provided here merely as an illustration.

Here are a few examples of Active Voice sentences followed by their Passive Voice equivalent:

Present

Os bombeiros apagam o incêndio.

The firefighters *extinguish* the fire.

O incêndio é apagado pelos bombeiros.

The fire *is extinguished* by the firefighters.

Present Perfect

Ultimamente os bombeiros têm apagado muitos incêndios.

Lately, the firefighters *have been extinguishing* (or: *are extinguishing*) many fires.

Ultimamente, muitos incêndios têm sido apagados pelos bombeiros.

Lately, many fires *have been extinguished* (or: *are being extinguished*) by the firefighters.

Imperfect

Antigamente, os bombeiros apagavam menos incêndios.

In the past, the firefighters *used to extinguish* fewer fires.

Antigamente, menos incêndios eram apagados pelos bombeiros.

In the past, fewer fires *used to be extinguished* by the firefighters.

Preterite

Os bombeiros *apagaram* muitos incêndios.

The firefighters *extinguished* many fires.

Muitos incêndios *foram apagados* pelos bombeiros.

Many fires *were extinguished* by the firefighters.

Pluperfect

O bombeiro *apagara* o incêndio.

The firefighter *had extinguished* the fire.

O incêndio *fora apagado* pelo bombeiro.

The fire *had been extinguished* by the firefighter.

Past Perfect

Os bombeiros *tinham apagado* muitos incêndios.

The firefighters *had extinguished* many fires.

Muitos incêndios *tinham sido apagados* pelos bombeiros.

Many fires *had been extinguished* by the firefighters.

Future

Os bombeiros *apagarão* todos os incêndios.

The firefighters *will extinguish* all fires.

Todos os incêndios *serão apagados* pelos bombeiros.

All fires *will be extinguished* by the firefighters.

Conditional

Os bombeiros *apagariam* todos os incêndios.

The firefighters *would extinguish* all fires.

Todos os incêndios *seriam apagados* pelos bombeiros.

All fires *would be extinguished* by the firefighters.

Present Subjunctive

É imperativo que os bombeiros *apaguem* todos os incêndios.

It is imperative that the firefighters *extinguish* all fires.

É imperativo que todos os incêndios *sejam apagados* pelos bombeiros.

It is imperative that all fires *be extinguished* by the firefighters.

Past Subjunctive

Era urgente que os bombeiros *apagassem* todos os incêndios.

It was urgent for the firefighters *to extinguish* all fires.

Era urgente que todos os incêndios *fossem apagados* pelos bombeiros.

It was urgent for all fires *to be extinguished* by the firefighters.

Past Perfect Subjunctive

Todos esperavam que os bombeiros *tivessem apagado* o incêndio.

Everyone hoped that the firefighters *had extinguished* the fire.

Todos esperavam que o incêndio *tivesse sido apagado* pelos bombeiros.

Everyone hoped that the fire *had been extinguished* by the firefighters.

Future Subjunctive

Se os bombeiros *apagarem* o incêndio, não haverá mais perigo.

If the firefighters *extinguish* the fire, there will be no further danger.

Se o incêndio *for apagado* pelos bombeiros, não haverá mais perigo.

If the fire *is extinguished* by the firefighters, there will be no further danger.

Personal Infinitive

É fácil os bombeiros *apagarem* o incêndio.

It is easy for the firefighters *to extinguish* the fire.

É fácil o incêndio *ser apagado* pelos bombeiros.

It is easy for the fire *to be extinguished* by the firefighters.

7.10 Auxiliary verbs

The verbs *ter*, *haver*, *ser*, *estar*, *ir*, *vir* and many others can be used as auxiliary verbs:

Eu *tenho* feito muito exercício.

I've been doing a lot of exercise.

Temos de ir às compras.

We must go shopping.

Havemos-de ir a Paris no Verão.

We shall go to Paris next summer.

Ele foi comido por um tubarão.

He was eaten by a shark.

Eu estava a ouvir música.

I was listening to music.

O navio vai partir.

The boat is going to leave.

Vimos visitar-te.

We came to see you.

ter	haver	ser	estar	ir	vir
------------	--------------	------------	--------------	-----------	------------

INDICATIVE

Present

tenho	hei	sou	estou	vou	venho
tens	hás	és	estás	vais	vens
tem	há	é	está	vai	vem
temos	havemos	somos	estamos	vamos	vimos
tendes	haveis	sois	estais	ides	vindes
têm	hão	são	estão	vão	vêm

Imperfect

tinha	havia	era	estava	ia	vinha
tinhas	haviais	eras	estavas	ias	vinhas
tinha	havia	era	estava	ia	vinha
tínhamos	havíamos	éramos	estávamos	íamos	vínhamos
tínheis	havíeis	éreis	estáveis	íeis	vínheis
tinham	havam	eram	estavam	iam	vinham

Preterite

tive	houve	fui	estive	fui	vim
tiveste	houveste	foste	estiveste	foste	vieste
teve	houve	foi	esteve	foi	veio
tivemos	houvemos	fomos	estivemos	fomos	viemos
tivestes	houvestes	fostes	estivestes	fostes	viestes
tiveram	houveram	foram	estiveram	foram	vieram

Pluperfect

tivera	houvera	fora	estivera	fora	viera
tiveras	houveras	foras	estiveras	foras	vieras
tivera	houvera	fora	estivera	fora	viera
tivéramos	houvéramos	fôramos	estivéramos	fôramos	viéramos
tivéreis	houvéreis	fôreis	estivéreis	fôreis	viéreis
tiveram	houveram	foram	estiveram	foram	vieram

Future

terei	haverei	serei	estarei	irei	virei
terás	haverás	serás	estarás	irás	virás
terá	haverá	será	estará	irá	virá
teremos	haveremos	seremos	estaremos	iremos	viremos
tereis	havereis	sereis	estareis	ireis	vireis
terão	haverão	serão	estarão	irão	virão

Conditional

teria	haveria	seria	estaria	iria	viria
terias	haverias	serias	estarias	irias	virias
teria	haveria	seria	estaria	iria	viria
teríamos	haveríamos	seríamos	estaríamos	iríamos	viríamos
teríeis	haveríeis	seríeis	estaríeis	iríeis	viríeis
teriam	haveriam	seriam	estariam	iriam	viriam

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

tenha	haja	seja	esteja	vá	venha
tenhas	hajas	sejas	estejas	vás	venhas
tenha	haja	seja	esteja	vá	venha
tenhamos	hajamos	sejamos	estejamos	vamos	venhamos
tenhais	hajais	sejais	estejais	vades	venhais
tenham	hajam	sejam	estejam	vão	tenham

Imperfect

tivesse	houvesse	fosse	estivesse	fosse	viesses
tivesses	houvessem	fosses	estivessem	fosses	viesses
tivesse	houvesse	fosse	estivesse	fosse	viesses
tivéssemos	houvéssemos	fôssemos	estivéssemos	fôssemos	viéssemos
tivésseis	houvésseis	fôsseis	estivésseis	fôsseis	viésseis
tivéssem	houvéssem	fôssem	estivéssem	fôssem	viéssem

Future

tiver	houver	for	estiver	for	vier
tiveres	houveres	fores	estiveres	fores	vieres
tiver	houver	for	estiver	for	vier
tivermos	houvermos	formos	estivermos	formos	viermos
tiverdes	houverdes	fordes	estiverdes	fordes	vierdes
tiverem	houverem	forem	estiverem	forem	vierem

IMPERATIVE

Affirmative

–	–	–	–	–	–
tem	–	sê	está	vai	vem
(tenha)	(haja)	(seja)	(esteja)	(vá)	(venha)

tenhamos	hajamos	sejamos	estejamos	vamos	venhamos
tende	havei	sede	estai	ide	vinde
(tenham)	(hajam)	(sejam)	(estejam)	(vão)	(venham)

Negative

não	—	—	—	—	—	—
	tenhas	hajas	sejas	estejas	vás	venhas
	tenha	haja	seja	esteja	vá	venha
	tenhamos	hajamos	sejamos	estejamos	vamos	venhamos
	tenhais	hajais	sejais	estejais	vades	venhais
	tenham	hajam	sejam	estejam	vão	venham

INFINITIVES

Impersonal Infinitive

ter	haver	ser	estar	ir	vir
-----	-------	-----	-------	----	-----

Personal Infinitive

ter	haver	ser	estar	ir	vir
teres	haveres	seres	estares	ires	vires
ter	haver	ser	estar	ir	vir
termos	havermos	sermos	estarmos	irmos	virmos
terdes	haverdes	serdes	estardes	irdes	virdes
terem	haverem	serem	estarem	irem	virem

PARTICIPLES

Present Participle

tendo	havendo	sendo	estando	indo	vindo
-------	---------	-------	---------	------	-------

Past Participle

tido	havido	sido	estado	ido	vindo
------	--------	------	--------	-----	-------

7.11 Impersonal, unipersonal and defective verbs

Impersonal,
unipersonal
and defective
verbs

7.11.1 Impersonal verbs

Impersonal verbs do not have a subject and are invariably used in the third person singular. They are usually related to nature:

amanhecer	to dawn	relampejar	to lighten
anoitecer	to grow dark	saraivar	to hail
chover	to rain	trovejar	to thunder
chuviscar	to drizzle	ventar	to storm
nevar	to snow		

7.11.2 Unipersonal verbs

Unipersonal verbs are only used in the third person singular or the third person plural:

acontecer	to happen	ganir	to whine (a dog)
constar	to be rumoured	ladrar	to bark
convir	to be convenient	zumbir	to buzz
galopar	to gallop	zurrar	to bray

7.11.3 Defective verbs

Defective verbs are not conjugated in all tenses. There are two groups of defective verbs.

7.11.3.1 Some verbs such as **abolir**, **aturdir**, **banir**, **colorir**, **demolir**, **emergir**, and **imergir** are not conjugated in:

- first person singular and plural of the Present Indicative;
- Present Subjunctive;
- third person singular of the Imperative;
- first and second person plural of the Imperative.

7.11.3.2 Some verbs, such as **adequar**, **falir**, **precaver-se** and **reaver** are not conjugated in:

- first, second and third persons singular of the Present Indicative;
- third person plural of the Present Indicative;
- Present Subjunctive;
- Imperative, except in the second person plural.

7.12 Reflexive verbs^B

eu	lavo- <i>me</i>	nós ¹	lavamo- <i>nos</i>
tu	lavas- <i>te</i>	(vós)	lavais- <i>vos</i>
ele, ela, você	lava- <i>se</i>	eles, elas, vocês	lavam- <i>se</i>

¹ When the reflexive pronoun is placed after the second person plural of the verb, the verb loses its final -s (e.g. nós lavamos = nós lavamo-nos).

7.12.1 Position of the reflexive pronoun

7.12.1.1 The reflexive pronoun is usually placed after the verb (linked to it by a hyphen) except in negative and interrogative sentences, after conjunctions, prepositions or relative clauses (see 5.1.2.1 and 5.1.2.2).

7.12.1.2 When the verb with the reflexive pronoun stands with an auxiliary, the pronoun can follow the main verb or the auxiliary (more colloquial):^B

Posso sentar-me aqui? May I sit here?

Posso-me sentar aqui? Can I sit here?

7.12.1.3 In the Indicative Future or Conditional, the reflexive pronoun is placed between the stem and the ending of the verb, with each part separated by hyphens:^B

<i>Future</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>	<i>Conditional</i>	<i>Conditional Perfect</i>
lavar-me-ei	ter-me-ei lavado	lavar-me-ia	ter-me-ia lavado
lavar-te-ás	ter-te-ás lavado	lavar-te-ias	ter-te-ias lavado
lavar-se-á	ter-se-á lavado	lavar-se-ia	ter-se-ia lavado
lavar-nos-emos	ter-nos-emos lavado	lavar-nos- íamos	ter-nos-íamos lavado
lavar-vos-eis	ter-vos-eis lavado	lavar-vos-íeis	ter-vos-íeis lavado
lavar-se-ão	ter-se-ão lavado	lavar-se-iam	ter-se-iam lavado

7.12.1.4 The reflexive pronouns can be supplemented with **um ao outro**, **uma à outra** or **uns aos outros**, to avoid confusion:

Estes peixes comem-se.

These fish are edible. *or* These fish eat each other.

Estes peixes comem-se uns aos outros.

These fish eat each other.

7.12.2 Here are the Infinitives of some of the most commonly used reflexive verbs:

achar-se	to find oneself	banhar-se	to bathe
amar-se	to love each other	barbear-se	to shave
apaixonar-se	to fall in love	chamar-se	to be called
beijar-se	to kiss each other	lavar-se	to wash
deitar-se	to go to bed, to lie down	sentar-se	to sit down
levantar-se	to stand up, to get up	sentir-se	to feel
pentear-se	to comb one's hair	voltar-se	to turn around

7.13 Changing vowel sounds in verbal conjugation

In many Portuguese verbs, the sound of the stem vowel changes in the Present Indicative, Present Subjunctive and the Imperative:

	<i>Present Indicative</i>		<i>Present Subjunctive</i>		<i>Imperative</i>
<i>First conjugation (-ar verbs)</i>					
open	lavo	open	lave	–	–
open	lavas	open	laves	open	lava
open	lava	open	lave	open	lave
	lavamos		lavemos		lavemos
	lavais		laveis		lavai
open	lavam	open	lavem	open	lavem

Note: In the first conjugation, the stem vowel is closed in all other tenses.

<i>Second conjugation (-er verbs)</i>					
closed	devo	closed	deva	–	–
open	deves	closed	devas	open	deve
open	deve	closed	deva	closed	deva
	devemos		devamos		devamos
	deveis		devais		devei
open	devem	closed	devam	closed	devam

<i>Third conjugation (-ir verbs)</i>					
u	durmo	u	durma		
open	dormes	u	durmas	open	dorme
open	dorme	u	durma	u	durma
	dormimos	u	durmamos	u	durmamos
	dormis	u	durmais		dormi
open	dormem	u	durmam	u	durmam

Note: In the first, second and third conjugations, the stem vowel is unstressed in all other tenses.

Adverbs

8.1 Uses of the adverb

Adverbs can act as modifiers of a verb, an adjective, another adverb or a whole sentence:

Ontem fui a Lisboa.

I went to Lisbon *yesterday*.

Ele é *bem simpático*.

He is *quite* nice.

Elas foram *muito depressa*.

They went *very* quickly.

***Infelizmente* choveu o dia todo.**

Unfortunately it rained all day long.

Adverbs are invariable: that is, they do not vary according to the gender, number or person of the word they are modifying.

Adverbs can be used to express:

- (a) *time*: **ontem** ('yesterday'), **hoje** ('today'), **amanhã** ('tomorrow'), **antes** ('before'), **depois** ('after'), **agora** ('now'), **já** ('already', 'straight away'), **logo** ('later'), **cedo** ('early'), **tarde** ('late'), **então** ('then'), **ainda** ('yet', 'still'), **enfim** ('at last'), **breve** ('soon'), **sempre** ('always'), **de vez em quando** ('once in a while').
- (b) *place*: **aqui**, **cá** ('here'), **aí**, **ali**, **lá**, **acolá**, ('there'), **perto** ('near'), **longe** ('far'), **diante**, **à frente de** ('in front of'), **atrás**, **detrás** ('behind'), **acima** ('above'), **em cima** ('on'), **por cima** ('over'), **abaixo** ('below'), **em baixo**, **por baixo** ('under'), **dentro** ('in', 'inside'), **fora** ('out, outside'), **onde** ('where'), **algures** ('somewhere').

Note: Some adverbs of place are used with reference to the position of the speaker and/or the hearer:

aqui	nearness to the speaker
aí	nearness to the hearer
ali	distance from both speaker and hearer
cá	nearness to the speaker without reference to the position of the hearer
lá, acolá, além	distance from the speaker without reference to the position of the hearer

- (c) *manner:* **bem** ('well'), **mal** ('badly'), **assim** ('thus'), **depressa** ('quickly'), **devagar** ('slowly') and most adverbs ending in **-mente** (see 8.2).
- (d) *intensity:* **pouco** ('little'), **muito** ('very'), **menos** ('less'), **demasiado** ('too much'), **quanto?** ('how much?'), **tanto** ('as much?'), **tão** ('so'), **mais** ('more'), **demais** ('too much', 'too many'), **bastante** ('enough'), **quase** ('almost').
- (e) *doubt:* **talvez** ('perhaps', 'maybe'), **por acaso** ('by chance'), **possivelmente** ('possibly'), **provavelmente** ('probably').
- (f) *negation:* **não** ('no'), **nem** ('nor'), **nunca** ('never'), **jamais** ('never ever').
- (g) *affirmation:* **sim** ('yes'), **certamente** ('certainly'), **realmente** ('really').
- (h) *exclusion:* **só, somente** ('only'), **unicamente** ('merely'), **simplesmente** ('simply'), **exclusivamente** ('exclusively'), **apenas** ('just', 'hardly').
- (i) *interrogation:* **onde?** ('where?'), **como?** ('how?'), **porquê?** ('why?'), **quando?** ('when?').

8.2 Adverbs in -mente

In Portuguese, many adverbs are formed by adding the suffix **-mente** ('-ly') to the adjective:

normal **normalmente** normal normally

But adjectives ending in **-o** in the masculine singular change to the feminine singular before the suffix **-mente** is added:

lento > **lenta** **lentamente** slow slowly

There are two important characteristics of adverbs in **-mente**:

- (a) Adverbs in **-mente** have no accents, even if the adjective from which they are formed does:

fácil **facilmente** easy easily

(b) When two or more adverbs are used in the same sentence, only the last one takes the suffix **-mente**:

Ele guiava lenta e cuidadosamente.

He was driving slowly and carefully.

8.3 Other adverbs

The adjectives **muito** ('a lot'), **pouco** ('little'), **demasiado** ('too much'), **melhor** ('better') and **pior** ('worse') can also be adverbs, if qualifying a verb:

Ela trabalha muito. She works a lot.

Ele come demasiado. He eats too much.

Pouco se sabe deste compositor. Little is known of this composer.

Adverbs may also consist of more than one word:

preposition + noun **sem dúvida** doubtlessly

preposition + adjective **ao certo** exactly

preposition + adverb **pelo menos** at least

two adverbs **nunca mais** never again

8.4 Position

8.4.1 Usually adverbs are placed before the adjective or after the verb they modify:

Que festa tão animada! What a lively party!

Ela chorou desesperadamente. She cried desperately.

8.4.2 Adverbs of time and place can either precede or follow the verb they modify:

Ele chegou hoje. He arrived today.

Hoje quero ficar aqui. Today I want to stay here.

8.4.3 Adverbs of negation always precede the verb:

Ela nunca tinha feito isso. She had never done that.

Não há pão. There is no bread.

8.5 Degree

8.5.1 Comparative

comparative of superiority **mais** + adverb + **(do) que**
more . . . than

comparative of equality **tão** + adverb + **como/quanto**
as . . . as

comparative of inferiority **menos** + adverb + **(do) que**
less . . . than

Eu vivo mais longe do que tu.

I live *further away* than you.

Ela vive tão longe quanto eu.

She lives *as far away as* I do.

Tu vives menos longe do que nós.

You live *closer than* we do.

Note: There are adverbs with special comparative forms:

bem > **melhor** well better

mal > **pior** badly worse

muito > **mais** a lot more

pouco > **menos** little less

Adverbs can be compared using **o mais** + adverb + **possível**:

Vou o mais depressa possível. I'll go as fast as I can.

8.5.2 Superlative

Adverb (minus final vowel) + **-íssimo**

Cantas muitíssimo bem. You sing very well.

Ela mora pertíssimo. She lives very near.

Conjunctions

9.1 Co-ordinating conjunctions

Co-ordinating conjunctions link clauses of identical grammatical function:

Ela brinca e eu estudo. She plays *and* I study.

Ela brinca mas eu estudo. She plays *but* I study.

The two elements of these clauses are independent of each other and could even be separated by punctuation:

Ela brinca, eu estudo. She plays, I study.

Ela brinca. Eu estudo. She plays. I study.

9.1.1 Copulative conjunctions

e	and
não só ... mas também	not only ... but also
nem ... nem	neither ... nor
tanto ... como	both ... and

O João é alto e magro.

João is tall *and* thin.

Ele não tem nem dinheiro nem trabalho.

He has *neither* money *nor* job.

Vim não só porque me pediste mas também porque eu queria ver este filme.

I came *not only* because you asked me to *but also* because I wanted to see this film.

Tanto a Helena como o irmão já sabem ler.

Both Helena and her brother can already read.

9.1.2 Adversative conjunctions

mas	but	todavia	yet
porém	however	contudo	nevertheless

Tropecei *mas* não caí.

*I stumbled *but* I did not fall.*

O dia estava bonito, *porém/contudo/todavia* não fui passear.

*It was a lovely day, *however/et/nevertheless* I did not go for a walk.*

9.1.3 Disjunctive conjunctions

ou	or	quer ... quer	whether ... or
ou ... ou	either ... or	nem ... nem	neither ... nor

Vens *ou* ficas?

*Are you coming *or* are you staying?*

***Ou* comes peixe *ou* comes carne.**

*You eat *either* fish *or* meat.*

***Quer* tu queiras *quer* não, tens de te ir embora.**

*Whether you want to *or* not, you must leave.*

9.1.4 Conclusive conjunctions

portanto	therefore; so	por consequência	consequently
logo	therefore; so	por conseguinte	consequently
por isso	therefore; so	pelo que	consequently
assim	thus		

O professor está doente, *por isso* não veio à escola.

The teacher is sick, so he did not come to school.

Note: Conclusive conjunctions are normally placed at the beginning of the clause they introduce.

9.2 Subordinating conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions link two clauses necessarily dependent on each other:

Eu estava a ler *quando* ele entrou.

I was reading *when* he came in.

9.2.1 Causal conjunctions

porque	because	visto que	seeing that
pois	because	já que	since
que	because	uma vez que	since
como	as		

Não telefonei *porque* não tive tempo.

I did not call *because* I did not have the time.

Como estava a chover ficámos em casa.

As it was raining we stayed in.

9.2.2 Concessive conjunctions

embora	although	mesmo que	even if; even though
apesar de	despite; in spite of	por mais que	as much as
ainda que	even if; even though	nem que	not even if

Apesar de estar um dia bonito não fui passear.

Despite/in spite of it being a lovely day I did not go for a walk.

Por mais que tentes, não me convences a ir de avião.

As much as you try, you will not convince me to go by plane.

9.2.3 Conditional conjunctions

se	if	excepto se	unless
caso	if	salvo se	unless
desde que	provided that	a não ser que	unless
a menos que	provided that		

A não ser que chova, fazemos um piquenique amanhã.

Unless it rains, we will have a picnic tomorrow.

Note: Conditional conjunctions take the verb either in the Infinitive or in the Subjunctive.

9.2.4 Final conjunctions

para que so that **a fim de que** in order to

Aproxima-te para que eu te possa ver melhor.

Come closer so that I can see you better.

Note: These conjunctions must be followed by the Subjunctive.

9.2.5 Temporal conjunctions

quando	when	antes que	before
apenas	as soon as	depois que	after
mal	as soon as; hardly	sempre que	whenever
logo que	as soon as	desde que	since
assim que	as soon as	enquanto	while

Quando eu cheguei, ele já estava em casa.

When I arrived, he was already home.

Enquanto ela lia o jornal, o marido via televisão.

While she was reading the paper, her husband watched television.

9.2.6 Comparative conjunctions

como	as	bem como	as well as
que nem	as	assim como	as well as
... do que	... than	como se	as if
tanto quanto	as much as; as far as		

Sei mais agora do que sabia há uns anos atrás.

I know more now *than* I knew a few years ago.

Ele fala como se fosse meu pai.

He speaks *as if* he were my father.

9.2.7 Consecutive conjunctions

tal que

tanto que

de tal maneira que

de tal modo que

} in such a way that

O rapaz caiu de tal maneira que teve que ser levado para o hospital.

The boy fell *in such a way that* he had to be taken to hospital.

9.2.8 Integrating conjunctions

que that **se** if

A Maria disse que também vinha à festa do João.

Maria said *that* she was also coming to John's party.

Note: Subordinating conjunctions are placed at the beginning of the clause they introduce.

Prepositions

10.1 Most commonly used prepositions

a	to	em	in
ante	before	entre	between
após	after	exceto	except
até	until	para	for; to
com	with	perante	in the presence of; before
conforme	according to	por	by
consoante	according to	salvo	except
contra	against	segundo	according to
de	of	sem	without
desde	from	sob	under
durante	during	sobre	over

10.2 Prepositional phrases

abaixo de	below	em vez de	instead; in place of
por baixo de	under	apesar de	despite; in spite of
acima de	above	a fim de	in order to
por cima de	on; over	antes de	before
em cima de	on; on top of	depois de	after
ao lado de	next to	diante de	in front of

além de	beyond	atrás de	behind
acerca de	about	longe de	away from
ao redor de	around	através de	through
em torno de	around	dentro de	inside; in
perto de	near	a respeito de	concerning; about
próximo de	near; close to	junto de	near
para com	towards	de acordo com	in accordance with; accordingly
por entre	through; amongst	fora de	outside; out of
ao longo de	along	em frente de	in front of
de cima de	from the top of	graças a	thanks to
ao pé de	next to; nearby		

Verbs
followed by a
preposition

10.3 Contraction of preposition + article or pronoun

See 3.4 on contraction of the definite article, 3.8 on contraction of the indefinite article, and 5.3.2 and 5.3.3 on demonstratives combined with prepositions.

10.4 Verbs followed by a preposition^B

olhar para	to look at	entrar em	to go into; to enter
assistir a	to attend; to watch	chegar a	to arrive at; to reach
encontrar-se com	to meet	ir a/para	to go to
casar-se com	to marry	ir de	to go by (transport)
mudar de	to change from	vir a/para	to come to
sorrir para	to smile at	vir de	to come by (transport)
rir de	to laugh at		

Some verbs followed by a preposition take a verb in the Infinitive:

ajudar a	to help to	gostar de	to like to
começar a	to start to; to begin to	pensar em	to think about
acabar de	to finish; to have just	pedir para	to ask to
lembrar-se de	to remember to	precisar de	to need to
esquecer-se de	to forget to		

Ajude-me a lavar o carro.

Help me wash the car.

O António acaba de sair.

António has just left.

Você esqueceu-se de apagar a luz.

You forgot to turn off the light.

Gosto de aprender português.

I like learning Portuguese.

Peço-lhe para prestar atenção.

I am asking you to pay attention.

Preciso de ir ao supermercado.^B

I need to go to the supermarket.

Additional notes on Portuguese usage

11.1 Gente/a gente

Gente means ‘people’ and it may correspond to **pessoas**. It takes a verb in the third person singular:

Aonde vai aquela gente toda?

Where are all those people going?

O café estava cheio de gente.

The café was full of people.

A gente do Porto é muito simpática.

The people of Oporto are very nice.

A **gente** may be used in the sense of **nós** in very colloquial speech. It is followed by a verb in the third person singular:^B

– **Aonde é que vocês vão?**

Where are you going?

– **A gente vai ao cinema. (Nós vamos ao cinema.)**

We’re going to the cinema.

11.2 Tudo/todo

Tudo is invariable and means ‘everything’ or ‘all’. It can be used with **isto**, **isso** and **aquilo** but never with a noun:

Tens que comer tudo. You must eat everything.

Tens que comer isso tudo. You must eat it all.

Todo is variable (**todo/a/os/as**), agreeing in gender and number with the noun it qualifies. It means ‘all’ or ‘every’ and is never used with **isto**, **isso** or **aquilo**:

Tens que comer as batatas todas.

You must eat all the potatoes.

Note: The degree of emphasis is increased if **todo/a/os/as** is placed immediately after the verb:

Tens que comer todas as batatas.

You must eat every single potato.

11.3 Por/para

Both **por** and **para** can be translated as ‘for’ but with different meanings:

(a) **Por** is used to convey the idea of:

Exchange (for)

Paguei €1 pelo café.

I paid €1 for the coffee.

Substitution (for)

Vou trocar estes sapatos pretos por uns castanhos.

I am going to change these black shoes for some brown ones.

Duration (for)

Por quanto tempo vais ficar em Itália?

(For) How long are you going to stay in Italy?

Por can also be translated as ‘through’ or ‘by’:

Route (through)

Vim para casa pelo parque porque estava um dia bonito.

I came home through the park because it was a beautiful day.

Process or method (through; by)

Passa a batatas pelo passador e depois adicione o leite.

Press the potatoes through the sieve and then add the milk.

Por avião.

By air mail.

Note: Remember that the preposition **por** contracts with the definite article (see 3.4.1.4).

(b) **Para** conveys the idea of

Destination, purpose, intention

Isto é para si.

This is for you.

É uma máquina para fazer pão.

It is a machine to make bread.

É para você comer pão fresco todos os dias.

It is for you to eat fresh bread every day.

11.4 A/para

Both **a** and **para** convey the idea of movement towards, but **a** implies a short stay whereas **para** implies a relatively long or permanent stay:^B

Eu vou ao Brasil em viagem de negócios.

I am going to Brazil on business (and I am coming back soon).

Eu vou para o Brasil.

I am going to Brazil (one assumes that I do not know when I am coming back).

11.5 Desde ... até/de ... a

Desde and **de** are used to express the starting point of a period of time or space:

Venho desde Leiria com os pneus em baixo.

Since Leiria my tyres have been going down.

De Maio em diante o tempo vai melhorar.

From May onwards, the weather is going to improve.

The endpoint of this period of time or space is expressed by **até** or **a**, where **desde** combines with **até** and **de** combines with **a**:

desde Janeiro até Junho from January to June

or

de Janeiro a Junho
desde as 9 até às 5 from 9 to 5

or

das 9 às 5
desde Braga até Guimarães from Braga to Guimarães

or

de Braga a Guimarães

The difference between usage is that **desde . . . até** is more emphatic:

O quê? Ele foi mesmo a pé desde Braga até Guimarães?
What? Did he really walk from Braga to Guimarães?

11.6 Próximo/seguinte

Both **próximo** and **seguinte** mean ‘next’. However, the difference between them lies in their point of reference: **próximo** means ‘next’ in relation to the present moment, whereas **seguinte** means ‘next’ in relation to a given point in the past or future.

Therefore, **próximo** is used in direct speech and **seguinte** is normally used in reported speech (and can be translated as ‘the following’):

No próximo mês não há aulas.

There are no classes next month.

Em Julho avisei que não havia aulas no mês seguinte.

In July I said that there would be no classes the following month.

11.7 Tão/tanto

Tão is invariable and can be used before an adjective or an adverb:

Esta paisagem é tão bonita! This landscape is so pretty!

Não comas tão depressa! Don’t eat so quickly!

Tanto is variable when placed before a noun (it agrees with the noun in gender and number: **tanto/a/os/as**) and invariable when placed after a verb as it refers to intensity:

Ele recebeu tantos presentes!	He got so many presents!
Gosto tanto daquele vestido!	I like that dress so much!

11.8 Affirmative/negative

The affirmative is usually expressed by **sim**, although this is rarely used on its own. An affirmative answer to a question is given by the verb, which may or may not be preceded or followed by **sim** as reinforcement:

Vais amanhã?	Are you going tomorrow?
Vou.	Yes.
Sim, vou.	Yes, I'm going.
Vou, vou. (less formal)	Yes, I'm going.

The negative is usually expressed by **não** (simple negative), **nem** (reinforced negative), **nunca** or **jamais** (absolute negative; the latter is more commonly used in literary language):

O Pedro não viu esse filme.	Pedro has not seen that film.
O Pedro nem viu esse filme.	Pedro has not even seen that film.
O Pedro nunca viu esse filme.	Pedro never saw that film.
O Pedro jamais viu esse filme.	Pedro never ever saw that film.

11.9 Ainda/já

Ainda usually means 'still', in statements, questions and answers; **ainda não** means 'not yet'. **Já** means 'already'; **já não** means 'not anymore'.

Ainda há pão?	Is there still some bread left?
Sim, ainda há algum.	Yes, there's still some.
Não, já não há nenhum.	No, there is none anymore.
Já há pão?	Is there already some bread?
Sim, já há.	Yes, there's already some.
Não, ainda não há.	No, there is none yet.

II

Additional
notes on
Portuguese
usage

II.10 Prepositions of time

a	aos domingos	on Sundays
	às 7 horas	at seven o'clock
	à tarde, à noite	in the afternoon, in the evening, in the/at night
de	de manhã, de tarde, de noite¹	in the/during the morning; during the afternoon; during the night
	das 9 às 5	from 9 to 5
em	no sábado passado	last Saturday
	em Junho	in June
	no Natal	at Christmas
	na Primavera	in Spring
para	às 5 para as 7	at 5 to 7 (i.e. 6.55 a.m.)

¹ We can say *à tarde* or *de tarde*, *à noite* or *de noite* but we can only say *de manhã*.

Note: Remember that the prepositions *de*, *a* and *em* are contracted with the definite article (see 3.4).

II.11 Prepositions with means of transport

de	carro, autocarro,^B metropolitano^B (metro), camioneta,^B taxi, eléctrico,^B barco, avião, comboio,^B burro	by car, bus, underground, coach, taxi, tram, boat, plane, train, donkey
a	pé, cavalo	on foot, horseback

But *em* is used when the means of transport is specified:

no carro do meu pai	in my father's car
no autocarro nº 52	in the number 52 bus
no comboio das 11 horas	on the 11 o'clock train
no cavalo da minha prima	on my cousin's horse

11.12 Word order (See also 5.1.2.2)

11.12.1 Pronouns and verbs^B

Non-subject pronouns are usually placed after the verb, linked to it by a hyphen:

Ela escreveu-me uma carta.

She wrote me a letter.

Ela telefonou-me e escreveu-me uma carta.^B

She phoned me and wrote me a letter.

Ela não telefonou, mas/contudo/porém/no entanto escreveu-me uma carta.

She did not phone but wrote me a letter.

Note: With compound tenses, pronouns are placed after the auxiliary verb:

Ela tinha-me escrito uma carta.^B She had written me a letter.

Note: With the Future Indicative or the Conditional pronouns are placed between the stem and the ending:

Ela escrever-me-á uma carta.^B She will write me a letter.

Ela escrever-me-ia uma carta.^B She would write me a letter.

But pronouns are placed before the verb in the following cases:

(a) In negative sentences:

Ela não me escreveu uma carta.

She did not write me a letter.

(b) In sentences beginning with *todo, tudo, muito, pouco, alguém, cada qual, qualquer, outro, tal, tanto, quanto*:

Alguém me escreveu uma carta.

Someone wrote me a letter.

Tanto me faz ir ao Japão como à China.

I do not mind going to Japan or China.

(c) In sentences beginning with adverbs:

Já me escreveu uma carta.

She has already written me a letter.

(d) In subordinate clauses:

Disseram-me que ela me tinha escrito uma carta.
They told me that she had written me a letter.

11.12.2 *Possessive pronouns and nouns*

Possessive pronouns are usually placed before the noun:

O meu carro é branco. My car is white.

But possessive pronouns are placed after the noun when the noun is accompanied by an indefinite article:

O João é um amigo meu. João is a friend of mine.

11.12.3 *Demonstrative pronouns and nouns*

Demonstrative pronouns are usually placed before the noun:

Este edifício tem vinte andares.
This building has twenty floors.

11.12.4 *Adjectives and nouns*

Adjectives are usually placed after the noun; however, when placed before the noun they can lose their objective meaning:

uma mulher grande a big woman

uma grande mulher a great woman

11.12.5 *Adverbs*

(a) Adverbs are placed before adjectives and participles or may be combined with another adverb (adverbs of intensity precede other adverbs):

uma mulher muito alta a very tall woman

Ele vinha muito apressado. He was very rushed.

Ela sentiu-se muito mal. She felt very bad.

(b) Adverbs of manner are placed after verbs:

Ele partiu subitamente. He left suddenly.

(c) Adverbs of time or place are placed before or after verbs:

Ontem fui a um concerto.

Yesterday I went to a concert.

Fui a um concerto ontem.

I went to a concert yesterday.

À direita fica o castelo de S. Jorge.

On the right is St George's castle.

O castelo de S. Jorge fica à direita.

St George's castle is on the right.

Note: Some adverbs placed before the verb can add emphasis:

Muito se esforça ele para agradar a todos.

He tries very hard to please everybody.

Ela sempre inventa uma desculpa.

She always makes up an excuse.

But the adverb **sempre** can be a sentence adverb if placed before the verb, thus modifying the whole sentence:

Eu viajo sempre de avião. I always travel by plane.

Eu sempre vou à China.^B I am *finally* going to China.

(d) Negative adverbs are placed before verbs:

Ele nunca foi ao teatro. He has never been to the theatre.

11.12.6 Direct/indirect objects

Objects are usually placed in the following order:

Eu dei o livro ao Luís. verb + direct object + indirect object
I gave *the book* to *Luís*.

If the direct object is replaced by a pronoun, this order does not change:

Eu dei-o ao Luís. verb + direct object + indirect object
I gave *it* to *Luís*.

However, if the indirect object or the two objects are replaced by pronouns, their order is altered. In a main clause or a question not introduced by an interrogative, the pronoun is attracted to the verb and linked to it by a hyphen:

Eu dei-lhe o livro. verb + indirect object + direct object
I gave *him* the book.

Eu dei-lho. (lhe + o) verb + [indirect object + direct object]
I gave *it* to *him*.

In a subordinate or dependent clause, in a question introduced by an interrogative, or in the presence of a negative, the pronoun is still attracted to the verb, but precedes it:

Ele diz que eu lhe dei o livro. subordinate clause + pronoun + verb

Quem lhe deu o livro? interrogative + pronoun + verb

Eu não lho dei. negative + pronoun + verb

11.13 Ser/estar

Both verbs are translated into English as ‘to be’, although *they are not* freely interchangeable:

Ser indicates a state of permanence and inherent qualities or conditions that are unlikely to change (location, nationality, profession, features, demeanour, etc.).

Estar refers to a state or condition that is changeable or likely to change (feelings, moods, change of location, weather conditions, etc.).

O templo de Diana é em Évora.

The Temple of Diana *is* in Évora.

Nem todos os Ministérios estão no Terreiro do Paço.

Not all Ministries *are* in Terreiro do Paço.

A Paula Rego é uma pintora portuguesa que está a viver em Londres.

Paula Rego *is* a Portuguese painter who *is* living in London.

A Judite sempre *foi* muito bonita, mas nas fotografias de casamento *está* linda.

Judite *was* always very pretty, but she *looks* beautiful in her wedding photos.

O João *é* uma pessoa naturalmente nervosa, ou *está* preocupado com os exames?

Is João a naturally nervous person or *is* he worried about his exams?

O Verão no Alentejo *é* geralmente quente, mas este ano *está* abrasador.

Summer in the Alentejo *is* usually hot but this year it *is* scorchingly hot.

PART II

Language functions

In an effort to make this section as clear and succinct as possible, the basic expressions are given, followed by a brief explanation and examples often in the form of a short dialogue. As in the previous section, a translation is provided for all examples.

Socializing

12.1 General greetings

12.1.1 Informal

Olá^B Hello!, Hi!

Frequently used for close family, friends and colleagues, **olá** can double up as a sign of recognition, like ‘Hi!’ in English. The reply is also **Olá!**

Olá! Hi!

Olá, Joana! Hello, Joana!

Viva! Hi!

Used more seldom, **Viva!**^B expresses delight on seeing someone:

Olá! Por aqui? Hello! Fancy meeting you here!

Viva! Há quanto tempo! Hi! It’s been a long time!

12.1.2 Formal welcome greeting

Bem-vindo/a/os/as. Welcome.

Used as a more formal welcome, **Bem-vindo** can be used for friends who have come to stay:

- **Bem-vindos a Viana do Castelo!**
Welcome to Viana do Castelo!
- **Olá, João! Bem-vindo a nossa casa.**
Hello, João! Welcome to our house.

Other variations:

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| dar as boas-vindas (a alguém) | } to welcome
(someone) |
| apresentar as boas-vindas (a alguém) | |
| apresentar votos de boas-vindas (a alguém) | |

A Comissão deseja apresentar as boas-vindas aos novos membros.

The Committee wishes to welcome its new members.

12.2 Taking leave

12.2.1 Informal

Adeus^B Goodbye

A general farewell formula, **adeus** can be used on its own or combined with other farewell formulas. On its own, it implies a longer parting until speakers meet again.

- **Adeus, boa viagem!**
Goodbye! Have a good trip!
- **Obrigada. Adeus!**
Thanks. Goodbye!
- **Adeus, até logo!**
Bye-bye! See you later!
- **Até logo!^B**
Bye!
- **Antes de partir, quero dizer adeus a todos os meus amigos.**
Before leaving, I want to say goodbye to all my friends.

12.2.1.1 There are other leave-taking formulas which can be used on their own or combined with **adeus**. Most of these formulas make a statement as to when speakers expect to meet again, and have as their key element the word **até**, ‘until’, which in this case has rather the meaning of ‘see you . . . (whenever)’.

Até já! See you anon, in a minute!

Até logo!^B See you later!

Até amanhã!	See you tomorrow!
Até depois de amanhã!	See you the day after tomorrow!
Até sábado! (or any day of the week)	See you on Saturday!
Até para a semana! ^B	See you next week!
Até para o mês que vem! ^B	See you next month!
Até para o ano! ^B	See you next year!
Até à próxima!	Until next time!
Até mais!	See you!
Até sempre! ^{B, 1}	Until we meet again!

¹ Até sempre is also used as a closing formula in letter writing.

12.2.2 More formal farewells, figurative

despedir-se de^B
apresentar despedidas

Quero-me despedir dos teus pais.
I want to say goodbye to your parents.

Desejamos apresentar as nossas despedidas à comissão de recepção e agradecer a agradável estadia que nos proporcionou.

We wish to bid farewell to the Reception Committee and thank them for a wonderful stay.

Coimbra tem mais encanto na hora da despedida.
Coimbra is more charming when you are about to leave.

12.3 Greeting/taking leave according to time of day

Bom dia!	Good morning!
Boa tarde!	Good afternoon!
Boa noite!	Good evening/night!

These formulas can be used to greet someone, to open a conversation, to attract someone's attention (mostly in shops), or to close a conversation, as one is about to leave.

- **Bom dia!** Good morning!
- **Bom dia!** Good morning!
- **Tem o Diário de Notícias?** Have you got the *Diário de Notícias*?
- **Não, só temos O Público.** No, we have only got *O Público*.
- **Prefiro o outro. Bom dia!** I prefer the other paper. Goodbye!
- **Boa noite! Que horas são?** Good evening. What time is it?
- **São oito e meia.** It is 8.30.

12.4 Attracting attention

As indicated above, any of these greetings (**bom dia**, **boa tarde** and **boa noite**) will do to initiate a conversation or attract attention in a café, a shop, or even to attract the attention of someone in the street who could help you with some information.

If you need to be more obvious, or you are in a crowd, for example in a café, restaurant, market, street, etc., you can use the following formulas:

Faça favor!^B Excuse me (meaning 'could you please give me/tell me/etc.')

Desculpe Excuse me

Pst!^{B,1}

¹ Can only be used to call a waiter in a café or restaurant. You must never say 'Waiter!' (*empregado*) in Portugal. Brazilians say *Garçon!*

Faça favor, têm gravatas de seda?

Excuse me, do you sell silk ties?

Desculpe, onde é o correio?

Excuse me, where is the post office?

Pst! Um café e um copo de água.

Waiter! A cup of coffee and a glass of water.

12.4.1 Asking people to pay attention

Any imperative forms of the verbs **olhar**, **escutar**, or of the idiom **prestar atenção** (see 7.3.1 and 7.4):

Olha!, Olhe!, Olhem!	Look!
Escuta!, Escute!, Escutem!	Listen!
Presta/preste/prestem atenção!	Pay attention!
Olha! Estou aqui.	Look! I am here.
Olhe! Tanta gente!	Look! So many people!
Escute! Isto é importante.	Listen! This is important.
Escuta! O que é este barulho?	Listen! What is this noise?
Preste atenção! Já temos pouco tempo.	Pay attention! We haven't much time.

All these can be emphasized and/or slightly modified by using them with *aquí* or *bem*:

Olha/e aqui!	Look here!
Escuta/e aqui!	Listen carefully!
Escuta/e bem!	Listen carefully!
Escuta/e bem aqui!	Listen really well to what I have to say!

Olha/e bem aqui!

Pay very good attention (do not ignore me, this, etc.)!

Olha aqui! Que significa isto?

Look here! What does this mean?

Olha bem aqui! A final, que pretendes?

Look here! What do you really want?

12.4.2 Warning

The following warning words are often used as a sharp cry or shout to warn people of danger. They can be followed by instructions, which are given with a Subjunctive as they have the function of commands.

Atenção!	Pay attention!
Cuidado!	Watch out! Be careful!
Aviso.	Warning.
Atenção aos comboios!	Watch out for trains!

Pare, escute e olhe!

Stop, listen and look!

Cuidado! Não caias!

Watch out! Don't fall!

Cuidado com o cão.

Beware of the dog.

Aviso**Só se aceita pagamentos
em dinheiro.****Notice**Payment must be made
in cash.**12.4.3** *Call for help***Socorro!**

Help!

Acudam!

Help!

Agarra que é ladrão!^B

Stop thief!

12.5 **Seasonal greetings****Feliz Natal!**

Merry Christmas!

Boas Festas!

Season's Greetings!

Festas Felizes!**Feliz Páscoa!**

Happy Easter!

12.6 **Personal greetings****Parabéns!**

Happy birthday!

Feliz aniversário!

Happy birthday/anniversary!

12.7 **Congratulations****Parabéns!**

Congratulations! Happy birthday!

dar os parabéns a (alguém)

to congratulate (someone)

Este ano recebi dez cartões de parabéns.

This year I received ten birthday cards.

Parabéns por teres passado no exame de condução.

Congratulations on passing your driving test.

Dou-lhe os meus parabéns por um excelente jantar.

I congratulate you on such a wonderful dinner.

12.8 Good wishes

Boas férias!	Have a happy holiday!
Bom fim-de-semana!	Have a good weekend!
Boa viagem!	Have a good trip/journey!
Feliz regresso!	Have a safe journey home!
Boa sorte!	Good luck!

12.9 Introductions

apresentar-se

to introduce oneself

ser apresentado a (alguém)

to be introduced to (someone)

ter o prazer de apresentar (alguém)

to have the pleasure of introducing (someone)

On being introduced, you say **muito prazer**, state your name and shake hands. Women may kiss each other instead of shaking hands.

- **Podes apresentar-me aos teus amigos?**
Will you introduce me to your friends?
- **Tenho o prazer de apresentar um antigo colega de curso.**
I have the pleasure of introducing an old college friend.
- **Muito prazer, António Lopes.**
António Lopes. Pleased to meet you.
- **O prazer é todo meu, Manuela Sá.**
Manuela Sá. Delighted. (The pleasure is all mine.)
- **Ontem fui apresentada ao Director.**
Yesterday I was introduced to the Director.

12.10 Forms of address^B

12.10.1 Informal

tu/você^B you (sing.) **vocês^{B,1}** you (pl.)

¹ Although meaning ‘you’, *você* and *vocês* are combined with pronouns and verbal forms in the third person. *As vós* (2nd person pl.) has become obsolete in modern Portuguese, *vocês* works as the plural of *tu* .

- **Onde é que vocês vão hoje à noite?**
Where are you going tonight?
- **Vamos ao cinema. Tu também queres vir?**
We are going to the cinema. Do you want to come as well?

12.10.2 Less informal

(verbal third person, subject unstated)^{B,1} you

você you (sing.)

vocês you (pl.)

o + name or surname you (male being spoken to)

a + name² you (female being spoken to)

¹ Although gaining in popularity, in Portugal *você* is still not widely accepted as a polite form of address. Some people find it patronizing and others can even find it offensive. To address people for whom *tu* is excessively informal, *o senhor* is excessively formal and *você* is unacceptable, it is common practice to use the third person of the required verb, as if one were using *você* but without actually saying it. If the subject needs to be stated, then use the name of the person being spoken to, as if it were a pronoun.

² As a rule, women are never addressed by their surname.

- **O Francisco e a Daniela, como estão de visita, não querem vir também?**
As you are here on a visit, wouldn't you (Francisco and Daniela) like to come too?
- **Nós gostávamos imenso de ver um filme português. O Silva é muito amável em nos convidar. Pode dar-nos boleia para o cinema?^B**
We would love to see a Portuguese film. It is very kind of you (Silva) to invite us. Can you give us a lift to the cinema?

12.10.3 Formal^B

o(s) senhor(es)	you (sir, ladies and gentlemen)
a(s) senhora(s)	you (madam, ladies)
o(s) menino(s)	you (boy, boys and girls), master
a(s) menina(s)	you (girl, girls), miss ^B

Note: These forms can double up as subject pronouns.

- **Os meninos sentem-se aqui enquanto a Menina Fernanda vai comprar os bilhetes para o museu.**
You (boys and girls) sit here whilst Miss Fernanda is buying the museum tickets.
- **As senhoras sabem a que horas termina a visita?**
Do you (ladies) know at what time the visit ends?

Other ways of saying 'you':

- V. Exa. (Vossa Excelência)^B** you (in writing or very formal occasions)
- V. Rev. (Vossa Reverência)** you (member of the clergy)
- **V. Exa. pode indicar a entrada para a sala de audiências?**
Can you (Sir/Madam) show me the way to the reception room?
- **É ao fundo à direita. Na antecâmara V. Rev. deve pedir que o anunciem a Sua Eminência.**
It is at the end on your right. In the antechamber you (Reverend father) must ask to be announced to His Eminence.

12.10.4 Titles^B

Sr. + surname	Mr ...
Sra. D. + first name	Mrs ...
Sr(a). + profession, position or title	
Dr./Sr. Dr. + surname	Dr ... (male)
Dra./Sra. Dra. + first name	Dr ... (female)

Note: The full title is used in formal occasions and in writing. In everyday communication the initial **Sr.** is dropped and only the professional title is used. As a rule, women's titles are combined with first names whereas men's titles are combined with surnames.

Other titles and formal forms of address:

Sr(a). Eng^{o(a)} . . .	for an engineer
Sr(a). Arq^{to(ta)} . . .	for an architect
Sr(a). Professor(a) . . .	for a teacher
Sr(a). Professor(a) Doutor(a) . . .	for a university teacher or professor
Sr(a). Ministro(a) (do/da + portfolio)	for a minister
Sr(a). Conde/Condessa (de . . .)	for a count/countess
Vossa Excelência (V.Exa.)	government and armed forces officials
Vossa Reverência (V.Rev.)	for members of clergy
Vossa Eminência (V.Ema.)	for a cardinal
Vossa Alteza (V.A.)	for princes, princesses, dukes and duchesses
Vossa Majestade (V.M.)	for kings, queens, emperors and empresses
Vossa Santidade (V.S.)	for popes

Note: Whenever these titles and forms of address need to be used as object pronouns, they can assume the form of **o senhor** or **Vossa Excelência**, depending on the degree of formality of the occasion. Any titles and forms of address with **Vossa** change into **Sua** when used as third person (see the dialogue in 12.10.3).

- **O Dr. Lemos já chegou?**
Has Dr Lemos already arrived?
- **Ainda não. O Sr. Eng^o. deseja deixar recado?**
Not yet. Would you like to leave a message?
- **Não. Prefiro falar com o Arq^{to}. Sousa Leitão.**
No. I prefer to speak to Mr Sousa Leitão.

- **Também não está. Foi chamado a uma reunião com o Sr. Ministro das Obras Públicas.**

He is not in either. He was called to a meeting with the Minister for Public Works.

12.10.5 Family^B

o pai, o papá^B	father, daddy
a mãe, a mamã^B	mother, mummy
o avô, o vovô^B	grandfather, granddad
a avó, a vovó^B	grandmother, grandma
o tio + (first name)	uncle . . .
a tia + (first name)	aunt . . .

Note: Members of the family belonging to the same generation as the speaker, or younger, are addressed by their first name. In Portugal any member of the family can be addressed informally by **tu** or less informally by their degree of kinship, **o avô, o pai, a mamã**, etc. depending on family habits.

- **A avó tem quem a leve a casa?**
Have you got someone to take you home, grandma?
- **Talvez possa ir com o teu tio Armando e tia Lita.**
Perhaps I could go with your uncle Armando and aunt Lita.
- **Os tios podem levar a avó a casa?**
Can you (uncle and aunt) take grandma home?
- **Podemos. Pergunta aos teus pais se depois querem vir connosco ao café.**
All right. Ask your parents if they would like to come to the café with us later.
- **O pai e a mãe querem ir com os tios ao café, depois de levarem a avó a casa?**
Would you (mum and dad) like to go to the café with uncle Armando and aunt Lita after they have taken grandma home?

Note the different forms of address and of saying ‘you’ in the above illustrative dialogue.

12.11 Talking about one's health

12.11.1 In small talk and greetings

Q: Como está(s)?	How are you?
A: Bem, obrigado/a.	Well, thank you.
Ótimo/a!	Very well.
Vamos indo.	Fairly well.
Menos mal.^B	So-so.

The expressions suggested above are used after an initial exchange of greetings. They can also serve as the opening of a detailed conversation about one's health. This is a favourite topic for conversation in Portuguese.

12.11.2 At the surgery/hospital

12.11.2.1 Asking how/what you feel

Como se sente?	How do you feel?
O que sente?	What do you feel?
Tem . . . (dores, febre, náusea, etc.)?	Have you got . . . (pain, a temperature, nausea, etc.)?
Sente . . . ?	Do you feel . . . ?

12.11.2.2 Saying what you feel

Tenho . . . (dores, febre, etc.)	I have . . . (pain, a temperature etc.)
Sinto . . .	I feel . . .
Doi-me . . . (a cabeça, um dente, etc.),	I have . . . (head-/tooth-ache, etc.)

12.11.2.3 Telling you what to do

Abra a boca.	Open your mouth.
Respire fundo.	Breathe deeply.
Deite-se de costas.	Lie on your back.
Deite-se de barriga para baixo.	Lie on your tummy.
Tire o casaco.	Take off your coat/jacket.
Arregace a manga.	Roll up your sleeve.
Tome ... (name of medicine)	Take ...
Deve tomar ...	You should take ...
Tem que tomar ...	You must take ...

... dois comprimidos três vezes ao dia.

... two tablets three times daily.

... uma cápsula quatro vezes ao dia.

... one capsule four times daily.

... uma drageia de seis em seis horas.

... one tablet every six hours.

Note: Doctors' instructions are given with the Present Subjunctive because they are polite commands (see 7.3.1 and 7.4).

12.11.2.4 Asking what you can/should do

Posso ... (fazer a minha vida normal^B/levar uma vida normal/continuar minha vida normalmente, beber, comer de tudo, etc.)?

Can I ... (carry on as normal, drink, eat anything, etc.)?

Devo ... (fazer dieta, repousar, etc.)?

Should I ... (diet, rest)?

Tenho que ... (faltar ao trabalho, etc.)?

Do I have to ... (miss work)?

Tenho que tomar ... (name of medicine)?

Must I take ... ?

Quantas vezes ao dia?

How many times a day?

12.12 Places and locations

12.12.1 Identifying places

Isto é ... (Lisboa, o Algarve, a Madeira)

This is ... (Lisbon, the Algarve, Madeira)

... (place name) **fica em** ... (place)

... (place name) ... is in ... (place)

12.12.2 Talking about places

Onde é ... (place)?

Where is ... ?

Onde fica ... (place, building, etc.)?

Where is ... ?

Como é ... (o Minho, Guimarães, etc.)?

What is ... like?

Como são ... (os Açores, as praias, etc.)?

What are ... like?

– **Onde é Guimarães?**

Where is Guimarães?

– **É no Minho.**

It is in Minho.

– **Onde fica o Castelo?**

Where is the castle situated?

– **Fica no centro da cidade.**

In the centre of town.

– **Como é o castelo?**

What is the castle like?

– **É muito antigo, de muralhas grossas de pedra.**

It is very old with thick stone walls.

– **Como são as ruas?**

What are the streets like?

– **São estreitas, fechadas ao trânsito.**

They are narrow and closed to traffic.

12.12.3 *Talking about place of origin, point of departure*

De onde é?	Where are you from?
De onde vem?	Where do you come from?
De onde vem ... (person, product)?	Where does ... come from?
É daí que vem ... (person, product)?	Does ... come from there?

- **De onde é?**
Where are you from?
- **Sou da Régua.**
I am from Régua.
- **E de onde é a sua colega?**
And where is your colleague from?
- **É da Alijó.**
She is from Alijó.
- **É de lá que vem o vinho do Porto?**
Is that where Port comes from?
- **É.**
Yes.
- **E de onde vem o vinho do Dão?**
And where does Dão wine come from?
- **Vem da região de Viseu.**
It comes from the region around Viseu.

12.12.4 *Place of residence and addresses*

Onde mora?	Where do you live?
Moro em ... (place name or address)	I live in ...
Mora em ... (place name, city area)?	Do you live in ... ?
Mora na/o ... (address)?	
Qual é a sua morada^B/endereço?	What is your address?

Qual é a morada do/a . . . (person, institution)?	What is the address of . . . ?
É na/o . . . (address).	It is in . . .
Onde vive?	Where do you live?
Vivo em . . . (country, region, town).	I live in . . .
Onde vive . . . (name of person)?	Where does . . . live?
Vive em . . . (country, region, town).	He/she lives in . . .

Note: **Viver** is more general and can refer to the country, region, city or address where one lives. **Morar** is more specific and refers only to the address or town where one lives. If in doubt, use **viver** as you have a greater chance of being correct. In Brazil, however, **morar** is more frequently used.

- **Vive em Lisboa?**
Do you live in Lisbon?
- **Não, vivo no Porto.**
No, I live in Oporto.
- **Qual é a sua morada?**
What is your address?
- **Rua dos Loios, 23–5° Esq.**
23, Rua dos Loios, 5th floor, left.
- **E os seus pais onde moram?**
And where do your parents live?
- **Moram em Marco de Canavezes.**
They live in Marco de Canavezes.
- **Qual é a morada deles?**
What is their address?
- **Largo do Anjo, 350–r/c Dt°.**
350, Largo do Anjo, ground floor, right.

12.13 Talking about the weather

Most statements about the weather are made with the verb **estar** because the weather is by its own nature *changeable*. Often the continuous form **estar a . . .**^B is used, as one describes the present weather conditions (see 11.13).

Está bom tempo.	The weather is good.
Está mau tempo.	The weather is bad.
Está calor.	It is hot.
Está frio.	It is cold.
Está sol.	It is sunny.
Está vento.	It is windy.
Está uma aragem.	There is a light breeze.
Está um vento fresco.	There is a cool wind.
Está a chover.^B	It is raining.
Está a nevar.^B	It is snowing.
Está a trovejar.^B	There is a thunderstorm.
Está a relampejar.^B	It is lightning.

With the idiom *estar a fazer^B* it is possible to make a more dynamic description of the weather or even intensify the weather conditions:

Está a fazer sol.^B	The sun is shining.
Está a fazer vento.^B	The wind is blowing.
Está a fazer frio.^B	It is very cold.

The expressions *ardente*, *de derreter*, *de rachar* can further intensify the description of the weather conditions. In the latter cases the preposition *de* introduces a metaphor.

Está um calor de derreter.	It is swelteringly hot.
Está um calor de morrer.	It is stiflingly hot.
Está um frio de rachar.	It is piercingly cold.
Está um frio de morrer.	It is deadly cold.

Any changes in the weather are expressed by verbs which imply a change in temperature:

aquecer^B	to warm up
arrefecer	to cool down
esfriar	to cool down
refrescar	to cool down

- **Ontem à noite fez muito frio.**
It was very cold last night.
- **As noites ainda arrefecem muito.**
It still gets very cold at night.
- **Sim, mas em Abril já era para começarem a aquecer.**
Yes, but for April they should already be getting warmer.

Exchanging factual information

13.1 Identifying people

The most helpful structures in this case are those related to ‘Interrogative pronouns’ (section 5.5, particularly 5.5.2 and 5.5.5).

The verb most used is *ser* (‘to be’) (see 11.13).

13.1.2 Identity

Quem é?	Who is it?
Quem é ... (someone)?	Who is ... ?
Quem são ... ?	Who are ... ?
Qual é ... (someone)?	Which is ... ?
Quais são ... ?	Which are ... ?
Como é ... (someone)?	What is ... like?

- **Quem é?**
Who is it?
- **Sou eu, a Ana, podes abrir a porta?**
It's me, Ana, can you open the door?
- **Quem são as pessoas que acabam de sair?**
Who are the people who have just left?
- **São os vizinhos do quarto andar.**
They are my fourth-floor neighbours.
- **Qual é a filha mais nova?**
Which is their youngest daughter?

- **É a de casaco vermelho.**
The one in the red jacket.
- **Quais são os mais simpáticos?**
Which are the nicest?
- **São os do quinto andar.**
The ones on the fifth floor.
- **E como são os vizinhos do lado?**
And what are the next-door neighbours like?
- **Não sei, estão sempre fora.**
I don't know; they are always away.

13.1.3 Ownership

De quem é ... (something)?	Whose ... is this/that?
Que ... (something) é este/esta?	Whose ... is this/that?
A quem pertence ... (something)?	Whom does ... belong to?
É/são ... (possessive).	It/they is/are ...
É/são de ... (someone).	It/they belong(s) to ...

- **De quem é esta pasta?**
Whose briefcase is this?
- **É da Ana Isabel.**
It belongs to Ana Isabel.
- **E que óculos são estes?**
And what about the glasses?
- **Também são dela.**
They are also hers.
- **E as luvas, a quem pertencem?**
And the gloves, whose are they?
- **São do Rui. Esqueceu-as aqui. Mas as luvas vermelhas são minhas.**
They are Rui's. He left them behind. But the red ones are mine.

13.1.4 Profession, occupation

Que é ... (someone)?	}	What does ... do?
O que é ... ?		
Que faz ... ?		
O que faz ... ?		
Qual é a tua/sua profissão?		What is your profession?
Qual é a profissão de ... (someone)?		What is ... profession?
Qual é o posto de ... (someone)?		What is ... rank/position?
Onde trabalha/s?		Where do you work?
		Who do you work for?
Onde trabalha ... (someone)?		Where does ... work?
		Who does ... work for?
Trabalho em ... (somewhere).		I work in ...
Em que firma trabalha?		Who do you work for?
Trabalho na ... (firm name).		I work for ...
Estou na ... (firm name/service).		I work for ...
- O que faz o teu primo?^B		What does your cousin do?
- É contabilista.		He is an accountant.
- E onde é que ele trabalha?		And where does he work?
- Trabalha num hotel. E o teu irmão?		He works in a hotel. And your brother?
- O meu irmão está na Marinha.		My brother's in the Navy.
- Qual é o posto dele?		What is his rank?
- É primeiro tenente.		He is a lieutenant.

- **O teu pai também é da Marinha?**
Is your father also in the Navy?
- **Não, já está reformado.**
No, he is already retired.

13.2 Identifying things

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| O que é isto/aquilo? | What is this/that? |
| Que ... (something) é este/a? | What ... is this? |
| Que tipo/espécie de ...
(something) é/são? | What kind of ... is/are ... ? |
| Como é ... (something)? | What is ... like? |
| De que é? | What is it made of? |
| De que é feito? | What is it made out of? |
| Como é feito? | How is it made? |
| Como se faz? | How does one make it? |
-
- **O que é isto?**
What is this?
 - **É uma torta.**
It is a tart.
 - **De que é?**
What is it made of?
 - **É de amêndoa.**
It is an almond tart.
 - **Como é feita?**
How does one make it?
 - **No forno, com um recheio de ovos e amêndoa.**
In the oven with an egg and almond filling.
 - **E que doce é este?**
And what dessert is this?
 - **São farófiás.**
They are 'farófiás'.

- **Como são as farófias?**
What are 'farófias' like?
- **São claras batidas cozidas em leite e com molho de ovos.**
They are beaten egg whites boiled in milk, with an egg sauce.

13.3 Asking for information^B

Pode-me dizer^B ... (sentence with interrogative)?
Could you tell me ... ?

Importa-se de me dizer ... ?
Would you mind telling me ... ?

Diga-me^B ... (sentence with interrogative), **por favor.**
Can you please tell me ... ?

Sabe dizer-me^B ... (sentence with interrogative)?
Could you tell me ... ?

Note: These phrases usually introduce a question with an interrogative pronoun (see section 5.5), an adverb (see 8.1(i)) or a conjunction (see section 9.2.8).

- **Pode-me dizer qual é a estrada para Espinho?**
Could you tell me which is the road to Espinho?
- **É a primeira à direita.**
It is the first on the right.
- **Diga-me se há próximo um posto de gasolina, por favor.**
Can you please tell me whether there is a petrol station nearby?
- **Há um à saída da cidade.**
There is one as you leave town.
- **E sabe dizer-me se está aberto a esta hora?**
And could you tell me if it is still open?
- **Está aberto até às dez da noite.**
It is open until 10 p.m.
- **Importa-se de me dizer as horas?**
Would you mind telling me the time?
- **São dez para as dez.**
It is 9.50.

13.3.1 *Asking the time*

Que horas são?	What time is it?
Tem horas?	Have you got the time?
Sabe-me dizer as horas?	Can you tell me the time?
A que horas ... ?	At what time ... ?

13.3.2 *Telling the time*

É/são ...	It is ...
Meio-dia	noon, midday
Meia-noite	midnight
... (hour) e um quarto	a quarter past ...
... (hour) menos um quarto	a quarter to ...
um quarto para a(s) ...	a quarter to ...
... (hour) e meia	half past ...
... (hour) e ... (minutes)	indicating hours and minutes
às ...	at ...
das ... às ...	from ... to ...
da manhã/da tarde	a.m./p.m.

- **Tens horas?**
Have you got the time?
- **São onze e um quarto.**
It is a quarter past eleven.
- **A que horas chega o comboio da Ana?**
At what time does Ana's train arrive?
- **Chega às duas e vinte.**
It arrives at twenty past two.
- **Podes ir buscá-la à estação? Tenho uma aula às duas da tarde.**
Can you meet her at the station? I have a class at 2 p.m.

- **Está bem. Sendo assim, podemos sair de casa por volta do meio-dia e meia, deixo-te na faculdade à uma e sigo depois para a estação.**

All right. In that case, we can leave the house at about half past twelve, I can leave you at the university at one and then I'll make my way to the station.

13.4 Reporting, describing and narrating

- These are all interrelated language functions. The main requirement to perform these functions correctly is to have a good knowledge of verbs, their tenses and the meaning of each tense (see Chapter 7). The Present (7.2.1), Imperfect (7.2.3) and Preterite (7.2.4) tenses are particularly important.
- Do not forget that when narrating an event which took place in the past, the Imperfect refers to the background state or action whereas the Preterite refers to the incident which occurs *once* at a given moment, frequently against the background described by the Imperfect (see 7.2.3.1d and 7.2.4.1b).
- The Imperfect can also imply the idea of habit or repetition (7.2.3.1b).
- The Present Perfect in Portuguese, contrary to most other languages, is a continuous tense. It describes an action that began in the past, has been developing until now and may even continue into the future (7.2.2.1a). It is a very fluid tense – no set start to the action and no set end.
- A good knowledge of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, their inflections, prepositions, conjunctions, etc. is also required.
- There are no set formulas for these functions, as each sentence will depend on what you have to say.

The best advice is always to *try and think in Portuguese*, using as many set phrases, formulas and structures as you have learnt so far, and adapting them to the message you have to communicate. This is particularly important if you are a beginner. Avoid at all costs thinking in your mother tongue and then translating into Portuguese.

If you compare the examples we give you in each section and the respective translation, you will notice that you are seldom presented with literal translations. That is because literal translations seldom work.

Quando eu era pequena íamos sempre passar o Verão a Mira. Tínhamos lá uma casa junto à praia onde havia uma lagoa enorme e as crianças podiam brincar e nadar em segurança.

Um dia, de repente, levantou-se um grande temporal. Uma onda gigantesca varreu a praia e chegou a fazer transbordar a lagoa. O meu irmão mais novo quase morreu afogado. Os meus pais, preocupados, nunca mais nos deram a mesma liberdade ao brincar na praia e passámos a fazer férias no campo.

Ultimamente, esses tempos da minha infância têm-me vindo à memória e espero, em breve, voltar a Mira ... com os meus filhos.

When I was young we always used to spend the Summer in Mira. We had a house there, near the beach, where there was a huge lagoon and the children could swim and play in safety.

One day, suddenly, there was a big storm. A huge wave swept over the beach and made the lagoon overflow. My younger brother nearly drowned. My parents, who were worried, never gave us the same freedom when playing on the beach and we began spending our holidays in the countryside.

Lately, those days of my youth have been coming back to me and I hope, soon, to return to Mira ... with my children.

13.4.1 Reporting

The advice given above applies equally to reporting in general, but a few guidelines are useful when reproducing and reporting speech.

Avoid repeating the same verb to introduce consecutive items of speech. Use different verbs, but make sure that they reflect the nature of the speech they refer to. Here is a useful list:

acrescentar	to add	garantir	to guarantee
afirmar	to state	indagar	to sound out
assegurar	to assure	informar	to inform
comentar	to comment	inquirir	to inquire

criticar	to criticize	insistir	to insist
declarar	to state, to declare	interrogar	to query
dizer	to say	perguntar	to ask

- **Eu não roubei o carro!, declarou o ladrão. Mas o agente da polícia comentou duvidoso:**
'I didn't steal the car!' declared the thief. But the police officer commented doubtfully:
- **Isso é o que se vai ver!, e acrescentou à queima-roupa: – É por isso que as chaves estavam no bolso do teu casaco.**
'That remains to be seen!' and he added as an aside: 'That's why the keys were in your jacket pocket.'
- **Mas esse casaco não é o meu!, assegurou o ladrão. – É tudo uma trama para me incriminar – afirmou.**
'But that jacket is not mine!' assured the thief. 'This is all a plot to frame me,' he stated.
- **Ontem estive todo o dia no trabalho – insistiu ele.**
'Yesterday I was at work all day,' he insisted.

Note: There is inversion of subject and verb when the direct speech is presented first and the reference to the speaker comes after, as above: '... – insistiu ele.'

13.4.1.1 Direct speech/reported speech

In reported speech the same range of introductory verbs is used as in direct speech, but the sequence of verbal tenses is different. A different sequence of adverbs of place and time, possessives and demonstratives is also required:

	<i>Direct speech</i>	<i>Reported speech</i>
<i>verbs</i>	Present	Imperfect
	Present Perfect, Preterite	Past Perfect
	Present and Future Subjunctive	Past Subjunctive
	Present Perfect Subjunctive	Past Perfect Subjunctive

<i>adverbs of place</i>	aqui	ali
	cá	lá
<i>adverbs of time</i>	ontem	no dia anterior
	hoje	nesse/naquele dia
	amanhã	no dia seguinte
<i>possessives</i>	first and second person	third person
<i>demonstratives</i>	isto	isso, aquilo
	este/esse	aquele
	estes/esses	aqueles

Now look at the new version of the previous dialogue in reported speech:

O ladrão declarou que não tinha roubado o carro. Mas o agente da polícia comentou duvidoso que isso era o que se ia ver, e acrescentou, à queima-roupa, que era por isso que as chaves estavam no bolso do casaco dele. O ladrão, no entanto, assegurou que aquele não era o seu casaco, afirmou que era tudo uma trama para o incriminar e insistiu que no dia anterior tinha estado todo o tempo no trabalho.

The thief declared that he had not stolen the car. But the police officer commented doubtfully that that remained to be seen and he added, as an aside, that that was the reason why the keys were in the pocket of the thief's jacket. The thief, however, assured him that the jacket in question was not his, stated that it was all a plot to frame him and insisted that the day before he had been at work all the time.

13.5 Letter writing

Letter writing is also related to reporting, narrating and describing, but letters contain specific elements such as a record of the date, typical opening and closing formulas, and the text itself often makes ample use of the Subjunctive, as letters often contain good wishes, requests or even commands.

13.5.1 Dates^B

- Always on the top right-hand side of the page.
- Write the place, the day in cardinal numbers, the month and the year.

Porto, 30 de Novembro^B de 1998 Oporto, 30 November 1998

13.5.2 Opening formulas**13.5.2.1** Formal

Exmo(a). Senhor(a)^B Dear Sir/Madam

Exmo(a). Sr. + (profession position, title + surname) Dear Mr/Dr/Captain/etc. . . .

13.5.2.2 Less formal

(Meu/Minha) caro(a) + (name) Dear . . .

(Meu/Minha) caro(a) amigo(a) Dear friend

(Meu/Minha) caro(a) colega Dear colleague

13.5.2.3 Informal

Olá + name Hi . . .

13.5.2.4 Intimate

(Meu/Minha) querido(a) + (name, pai, mãe, tio, irmão . . .)

Dear . . . father/mother/uncle/brother/etc.

Meu amor Dearest

13.5.3 Closing formulas**13.5.3.1** Formal

De V.Exa. Yours sincerely

muito atentamente

Melhores cumprimentos¹ Yours faithfully

¹ Nowadays, the formula **Melhores cumprimentos** is more widely used.

Santarém, 1 de Março de 1998

Santarém, 1 March 1998

Exmo. Senhor,

Dear Sir,

Agradecemos a V. carta de 25.2.98 e informamos que o pagamento já foi feito no dia 23 do corrente. Agradecemos que nos enviassem o respectivo recibo.

Thank you for your letter of 25.2.98. We can inform you that payment has been made on 23rd of this month. We would be grateful if you could send us the respective receipt.

**De V. Exa.
muito atentamente,
(assinatura)**

Yours sincerely,
(signature)

13.5.3.2 Less formal

Cumprimentos Regards
Um abraço Best wishes

13.5.3.3 Informal

Um beijo¹ Kisses **Um abraço** Hugs

¹ Um beijo is used between women, from women to men and vice versa, but never between men.

13.5.3.4 Intimate

Um beijo Love
Um abraço Love
Muitas saudades Lots of love

Recife, 3.4.99

Recife, 3.4.99

Cara Guida,

Dear Guida,

Adoro o Recife. O tempo está maravilhoso e as pessoas são fantásticas. Até breve.

I love Recife. The weather is fantastic and the people are wonderful. See you soon.

**Saudades,
(nome)**

Love,
(name)

13.6 Correcting assumptions

The easiest and most straightforward way of correcting assumptions made by someone addressing the speaker is to say **Não** and then confirm the negative with a short negative sentence. A simple ‘**não**’ for an answer is judged somewhat curt and impolite.

Não, não + verb No, I don’t/haven’t.

- **Tem troco de €100?**
Have you got change for €100?
- **Não, não tenho.**
No, I haven’t.

Alternatively, one can say **não** and then follow it with a correcting statement. This can be introduced by **mas**, ‘but’, include the expression **é que**, a confirmation with the verb **ser** or even use a prepositional pronoun to emphasize the correction.

- **O senhor tem troco de €200?**
Have you got change for €200?
- **Não, só tenho de €100.**
No, only for €100.
- **Mas nós avisámos que os pagamentos deviam ser feitos no montante exacto.**
But we made it clear that all payments had to be made in the correct amount.
- **Não, a mim ninguém disse nada. O senhor falou foi com esta senhora ao lado.**
No, I was not told anything of the sort. The person you spoke to was this lady next to me.

13.6.1 Polite formulas to introduce corrections

Desculpe, mas ...	Excuse me, but ...
Lamento, mas ...	I am sorry, but ...
Está enganado/a, ...	You are mistaken, ...
Está errado/a ...	You are wrong ...
Isso não é assim.	That is not so.
Isso não é bem assim.	That is not quite so.

- **Lamento, mas essa promoção já terminou.**
I am sorry, but that special offer has already ended.
- **Desculpe, mas o vale ainda está dentro do prazo.**
Excuse me, but the voucher is still within the expiry date.
- **Está enganado, essa oferta já expirou.**
You are mistaken, that offer has ended.
- **Como pode ser, se as instruções dizem o contrário?**
How is that possible, if the instructions say the opposite?
- **Isso não é bem assim, a oferta só dura enquanto houver stock¹.**
That is not quite so. The offer is only valid as long as stocks last.

¹ Estoque in Brazilian Portuguese.

Getting things done

14.1 Suggesting a course of action

Vamos!	Let's go!
Vamos + (Infinitive phrase)	Let us . . .
E se + (phrase with Past Subjunctive)	What if we . . .
Porque não + (phrase with Present tense)	Why don't we . . .
Podíamos + (Infinitive phrase)	We could . . .
Devíamos + (Infinitive phrase)	We should . . .

- **E se fôssemos fazer um piquenique?**
What if we had a picnic?
- **Ótima ideia! Vamos!**
Great idea! Let's!
- **Podíamos convidar os nossos colegas ingleses.**
We could invite the English students.
- **Claro, mas devíamos também convidar os outros colegas estrangeiros, porque é uma excelente oportunidade de confraternizar com todos.**
Of course, but we should also invite the other foreign students, as it is an excellent opportunity to socialize with everybody.
- **Porque não aproveitamos já o próximo fim-de-semana?**
Why don't we take advantage of next weekend?

14.2 Offering to do something**Quer/quieres/querem que**¹ + (phrase with Present Subjunctive)?

Do you want me to ... ?

Deseja que¹ + (phrase with Present Subjunctive)?

Would you like me to ... ?

Posso + (verb in Infinitive)?

Can I/May I ... ?

Podemos + (verb in Infinitive)?

Can we/May we ... ?

¹ The Subjunctive must be used with these phrases because they imply an indirect command or wish.

– **Posso ajudar? Querem que traga uns pasteis de bacalhau?**

Can I help? Do you want me to bring some fish cakes?

– **Nós também podemos dar uma ajuda e trazer uma sobremesa.**

We can also give you a hand and bring a dessert.

14.3 Requesting others to do something

Most requests are made with the verb either in the Imperative or in the Present Subjunctive (see sections 7.3 and 7.4), but they can also be introduced by some set formulas followed by phrases with the verb in the Present Subjunctive:

Desejo/desejamos que ... I/we wish you to ...

Peço/pedimos que ... I/we ask you to ...

Quero/queremos que ... I/we want you to ...

Ordeno/ordenamos que ... I/we order you to ...

Importa-se de + (phrase with Infinitive)? Would you mind ... ?

Note: All these requests can be either preceded or followed by *por favor*, *se faz favor*, etc.

– **Ó Ana, faz uma torta de amêndoa e traz guardanapos de papel, se fazes favor.**

Ana, please bake an almond tart and bring paper napkins.

- **Está bem, mas quero que me digas quantas pessoas vais convidar para o piquenique.**

All right, but I want you to tell me how many people you are inviting to the picnic.

- **Importas-te de me telefonar amanhã à noite? Nessa altura já te posso dizer.**

Do you mind phoning me tomorrow evening? I can tell you then.

14.4 Inviting others to do something

Gostava/s de + (phrase with Infinitive)? Would you like to ... ?

Quer/es + (phrase with Infinitive)? Do you want to ... ?

convidar to invite

Está/s convidado/a. You are invited.

Está/s convidado/a para ... You are invited to ...

- **O David também quer vir connosco?**^B

David, do you want to come too?

- **Claro que quero.**

Of course I do.

- **Então está convidado.**

Then you are invited.

- **Também posso convidar a minha irmã?**

Can I also invite my sister?

- **Com todo o gosto.**

With pleasure.

- **Então aceito já em nome dela.**

Then I accept on her behalf.

14.5 Asking for and giving advice

Que aconselha? What do you advise?

Qual é o teu/seu conselho? What is your advice?

Que acha(s) que devo fazer? What do you think I should do?

Aconselho-o/a a + (phrase with Infinitive)

I advise you to ...

O meu conselho é que + (phrase with Subjunctive)

My advice is that you ...

Não o/a aconselho a + (phrase with Infinitive)

I advise you not to ...

Aconselho-o/a a não + (phrase with Infinitive)

I advise you not to ...

O meu conselho é que não + (phrase with Subjunctive)

My advice is that you should not ...

No teu/seu lugar + (phrase with Conditional or Imperfect)

If I were you ...

Note: Some of the expressions above require a Subjunctive because they are equivalent to indirect commands or wishes (see section 7.3).

- **Eu adorava ir ao piquenique, David, mas tenho tanto trabalho para acabar. Que achas que devo fazer?**
I would love to go to the picnic, David, but I have so much work to finish. What do you think I should do?
- **O meu conselho é que te divirtas primeiro e depois te lances ao trabalho.**
My advice is that you have some fun first and then you throw yourself into your work.
- **Mas como vou conseguir terminar tudo?**
But how am I going to finish everything?
- **Primeiro aconselho-te a não ficar excessivamente preocupada, e depois é de facto melhor descansar um pouco. No teu lugar, eu não perdia o piquenique.**
First, I advise you not to get too worried and then it is in fact better for you to have a bit of a break. If I were you, I would not miss the picnic.

14.6 Warning others

(See also 12.4.2.)

Atenção! Watch out!

Preste atenção! Watch out!

Cuidado!	Take care! Watch out!
Perigo!	Danger!
Olha/olhe que . . .	Beware/Be careful . . .
Tem/tenha cuidado com/porque . . .	Be careful because . . .
Toma/tome cautela com/porque . . .	Beware/Be careful because . . .
Toma/tome cuidado com/porque . . .	Beware/Be careful because . . .
Está avisado/a.	You have been warned/told.

Quiet words of warning can also be expressed by means of sentences with the verb in the Subjunctive. Such sentences are equivalent to indirect or polite commands or wishes (see 7.3).

- **Olhe que é muito perigoso ir nadar com a bandeira vermelha.**
Be careful, because it is dangerous to swim when the red flag is up.
- **Acha que sim? Pensei que aqui não havia perigo.**
Do you think so? I thought there was no danger here.
- **Tome cautela, porque o mar aqui é muito forte e a corrente puxa para longe.**
Be careful, because the sea here is very strong and the current drags you away.
- **Mas eu gosto tanto de nadar.**
But I enjoy swimming so much.
- **Está avisado. Depois não se queixe.**
You have been told. Do not complain later.

14.7 Instructing others to do/not to do something

These instructions are given using sentences with the verb in the Present Subjunctive because these are, in effect, commands. This type of sentence is used in instructions on how to operate equipment, in cooking recipes, advertising, propaganda, etc. (See 12.11.2.3; doctors' instructions are also given in the Subjunctive.)

Arroz doce

Ponha uma chávena¹ de arroz numa panela e cubra-o de água. Não deixe ferver mais de 10 minutos.

Adicione casca de limão, e sal e, agora, deixe aferventar mais 5 a 10 minutos adicionando leite quente.

Quando o arroz estiver cozido, adicione um pouco mais de açúcar do que a quantidade de arroz e deixe ferver um pouco mais.

Finalmente, junte duas colheres de sopa de manteiga, mexa até derreter, retire do lume,² e sirva numa travessa ou numa taça. Polvilhe com canela.

Rice pudding

Put a cupful of rice in a pan and cover it with water. Do not allow it to boil for more than ten minutes. Add lemon rind and salt and now allow to simmer for another 5 to 10 minutes, adding hot milk. When the rice is soft, add a little more sugar than the amount of rice used and allow to simmer a little longer. Finally, add two dessertspoons of butter, stir until the butter melts, remove from the heat, and pour into a server or a bowl. Sprinkle with cinnamon.

¹ Xícara in Brazilian Portuguese.

² Fogo in Brazilian Portuguese.

14.8 Requesting assistance

Once again, as most of these sentences are equivalent to commands or polite requests, they require the use of the Subjunctive:

Ajuda/e-me^B a + (phrase with Infinitive)

Help me to ...

Pode(s) ajudar-me^B a + (phrase with Infinitive)

Can you help me to ... ?

Pode(s) dar uma ajuda?

Can you help?

Dá/dê-me^B uma ajuda.

Give me a hand.

- **Ajuda-me a lavar o carro, por favor.**
Help me wash the car, please.
- **Está bem, mas depois também me dás uma ajuda com o jardim.**
All right, but afterwards you give me a hand in the garden too.

14.9 Stating and finding out whether something is compulsory

É obrigatório + (phrase with Infinitive)
It is compulsory to ...

Tem que se + (phrase with Infinitive)
One has to ...

Não é obrigatório + (phrase with Infinitive)
It is not compulsory to ...

Não é necessário + (phrase with Infinitive)
It is not necessary to ...

É obrigatório?
Is it compulsory?

Tem que se + (phrase with Infinitive)?
Does one have to ... ?

Tenho/temos que + (phrase with Infinitive)?
Do I/we have to ... ?

- **É necessário responder ao convite?**
Do we have to reply to the invitation?

- **Sim, até ao dia 15 deste mês.**
Yes, up until the 15th of the month.

- **Temos que ir de gravata?**
Do we have to wear a tie?

- **Não é obrigatório, mas era melhor.**
It is not compulsory, but it would be advisable.

14.10 Seeking, giving, refusing permission**Pode-se** + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Can one ... ?

Posso/podemos + (phrase with Infinitive)?

May I/we ... ?

É permitido + (phrase with Infinitive)

Is one allowed to ... ?

Temos autorização de/para + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Have we permission to ... ?

É possível + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Is it possible/Is one allowed to ... ?

É proibido + (phrase with Infinitive)

It is forbidden to ...

Não é permitido + (phrase with Infinitive)

One is not allowed to ...

Dar autorização de/para + (phrase with Infinitive)

To give permission to ...

– **Pode-se fumar?**

Is smoking allowed?

– **Não. Aqui no refeitório é proibido, mas na sala de convívio já é permitido.**

No, here in the refectory, it is forbidden, but it is allowed in the Common Room.

– **É possível convidar uma colega inglesa para vir almoçar aqui?**

Is it possible for me to invite an English colleague for lunch here?

– **Tem que pedir ao director se dá autorização.**

You must ask the director for permission.

14.11 Expressing and finding out about need**Preciso de** + (phrase with Infinitive)

I need to ...

Preciso que + (phrase with Subjunctive)

I need to ...

Tenho necessidade de + (phrase with Infinitive)

I need ...

Precisa(s) de + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Do you need to ... ?

Precisa(s) que + (phrase with Subjunctive)?

Do you need to ... ?

Tens/Tem necessidade de + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Do you need ... ?

– **Precisas de dinheiro?**

Do you need any money?

– **Neste momento não, mas amanhã tenho necessidade de ir ao banco porque preciso de pagar a renda da casa.**

Not at the moment, but tomorrow I have to go to the bank because I need to pay my rent.

14.12 Enquiring and expressing intention, want or desire

Tenciona(s) + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Do you intend to ... ?

Que tenciona(s) + (Infinitive)?

What do you intend to ... ?

Tens/Tem a intenção de + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Do you intend to ... ?

Está(s) decidido/a a + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Are you determined to ... ?

Deseja(s) + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Do you wish to ... ?

Quer(es) + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Do you want to ... ?

Quero + (phrase with Infinitive)

I want to ...

Tenho a intenção de + (phrase with Infinitive)

I intend to ...

Faço tenção/tenções de + (phrase with Infinitive)

I intend to ...

- **Que tencionas fazer quando terminares o curso?**^B
What do you intend to do when you finish your degree?
- **Quero ir trabalhar em Angola.**
I want to work in Angola.
- **Estás mesmo decidido a sair de Portugal?**
Are you quite determined to leave Portugal?
- **Estou. Só tenho intenção de regressar ao fim de dois anos.**
Yes, I am. I only intend to return at the end of two years.

Finding out and expressing intellectual attitudes

15.1 Agreement and disagreement

Que acha(s)?	What do you think?
Acha(s) que sim?	Do you accept/approve? Do you think so?
Acha(s) bem?	Do you think it is all right?
Concorda(s)?	Do you agree?
Está(s) de acordo?	Do you agree?
Não acha(s) bem?	Don't you agree/approve?
Não concorda(s)?	Don't you agree? You do not agree?
Não está(s) de acordo?	Don't you agree? You do not agree?
Acha(s) que não?!	You do not approve?
Tem/tens objecções?!	Do you object?
Não tem/tens objecções?!	Don't you object?
Quais são as objecções?	What have you got against it?
Está bem.	All right.
Acho bem.	I agree.
Muito bem.	Very well. Very good.
Boa ideia!	Good idea!
Concordo.	I agree.
Concordo plenamente!	I completely agree.
Penso/acho que sim.	I think so.

Não senhor!	Absolutely not!
Não concordo.	I do not agree.
Discordo.	I disagree.
Discordo plenamente!	I thoroughly disagree!
Penso/acho que não.	I don't think so.
Não pode ser!	That is not possible.
Nem pensar!	Heaven forbid!
Redondamente não!	Absolutely not!
De jeito nenhum!	No way!
Não se pode tolerar que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It cannot be tolerated that . . .

¹ These questions are half-expecting an expression of disagreement.

- **No Verão podíamos ir numa excursão ao Amazonas. Que achas?**
In the Summer we could go on a trip to the Amazon. What do you think?
- **Eu acho bem. É uma ótima ideia.**
I agree. It is a fantastic idea.
- **Pois eu acho que não.**
Well, I disagree.
- **Não achas bem ir visitar uma das regiões mais fascinantes do mundo, e que está em risco de extinção?**
Don't you approve of visiting one of the most fascinating regions in the world, which is in danger of extinction?
- **Eu, não. Discordo plenamente.**
No, I don't! I thoroughly disagree.
- **Quais são as objecções?**
What have you got against it?
- **Não se pode tolerar que turistas como nós contribuam para danificar ainda mais o ambiente. Além disso, íamos estragar as férias a palmilhar a selva por um calor insuportável. Nem pensar!**
It is intolerable that tourists like us contribute towards further damaging the environment. Besides, our holidays would be spoilt, trotting about the jungle in unbearable heat. Heaven forbid!

15.2 Knowing something or someone

Knowing
something or
someone

O que é isto?	What is this?
Sabe(s) o que é isto?	Do you know what this is?
Conhece(s) este produto?	Do you know this product?
Sabe(s) se ... ?	Do you know if ... ?
Sabe(s) dizer-me se ... ?	Can you tell me if ... ?
Conhece(s) ... (someone)?	Do you know/Are you acquainted with ... ?
Conhece(s) bem ... ?	Are you well acquainted with ... ?
Sei, sim.	Yes, I do (know something).
Conheço, sim.	
Conheço bem ...	I am well acquainted with ...
Conheço mal ...	I do not know (someone/something) very well./I am not well acquainted with ...
Não sei ...	I do not know (something).
Não conheço ...	I do not know (someone).
Desconheço ...	I do not know (something/someone).
Desconheço por completo.	I really do not know.
Não sei de todo.	I do not know at all.

- **Sabe quem é o Dr. Sampaio?**
Do you know who Dr Sampaio is?
- **Sei, sim. É médico de clínica geral neste centro clínico.**
Yes, I do. He is a GP in this surgery.
- **Sabe dizer-me se já chegou?**
Can you tell me whether he has already arrived?
- **O Dr. Sampaio já veio e já saiu. Às terças-feiras só dá consulta de manhã.**
Dr Sampaio has been and has already left. He only sees patients in the morning on Tuesdays.

- **Sabe se deixou recado para mim? Tinha-me dito que viesse falar sobre os resultados das análises.**
Do you know whether he left a message for me? He told me to come and discuss the result of my tests.
- **Desconheço completamente. O Dr. Sampaio não está e não deixou qualquer recado.**
I really do not know. Dr Sampaio is not in and he has left no message.

15.3 Remembering something or someone

Lembras-te de ... ?	}	Do you remember ... ?
Lembra-se de ... ?		
Não te lembras/recordas de ... ?	}	Don't you remember ... ?
Não se lembra/recorda de ... ?		
Esqueceste-te de ... ?	}	Have you forgotten ... ?
Esqueceu-se de ... ?		
Sim, lembro.		Yes, I remember.
Lembro-me bem de ...		I remember ... well.
Não me lembro.		I do not remember.
Não me lembro nada.		I do not remember at all.
Não me lembro de nada.		I do not/cannot remember a thing.
Tenho uma ideia.		I have an idea.
Tenho uma vaga ideia.		I have a vague idea.
Não tenho ideia nenhuma.¹		I have no idea.
Não faço a mínima ideia.		I haven't got the faintest idea.

¹ If you change the word order into **Não tenho nenhuma ideia**, it means 'I do not have any ideas'.

- **Recorda-se de eu ter vindo aqui ontem fazer compras?**
Do you remember me coming here yesterday to do some shopping?

- **Sim, recordo bem.**
Yes, I remember it well.
- **É que paguei €35 na caixa por dois CDs, mas esqueci-me de os levar. Lembra-se?**
I paid €35 at the till for a couple of CDs, but I forgot to take them with me. Do you remember?
- **Não. Não faço a mínima ideia.**
No. I haven't the faintest idea.
- **Tente recordar-se. Eu vim com uma amiga directamente do trabalho. Estávamos as duas com o uniforme da polícia.**
Try to remember. I came directly from work with a friend.
We were both wearing our police uniform.
- **Ah! Sim, pareço recordar-me agora.**
Oh! Yes, I seem to remember now.

15.4 Possibility and impossibility

This type of sentence requires two basic phrase structures with the main verb in either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive:

Infinitive: when you want to ask or to state whether it is possible or impossible to do something,
e.g. **É impossível eles chegarem a tempo.**

Subjunctive: when you want to judge whether something is possible or impossible. As this is the same as putting forward a hypothesis, a Subjunctive is required (see 7.3e): e.g. **É impossível que eles cheguem a tempo.**

É possível?	Is it possible?
É possível + (phrase with Infinitive)?	Is it possible to ... ?
É possível que¹ + (phrase with Subjunctive)?	Is it possible to/that ... ?
Será possível + (phrase with Infinitive)?	Will it be possible?
Será possível que¹ + (phrase with Subjunctive)?	Can it be possible ... ?

Não é possível?	Is it not possible?
É impossível?	Is it impossible?
É impossível + (phrase with Infinitive)?	Is it impossible to . . . ?
É impossível que ¹ + (phrase with Subjunctive)?	Is it impossible to/that . . . ?
Talvez.	Perhaps/Maybe.
Talvez + (phrase with Subjunctive)	Perhaps/Maybe . . .
Talvez sim/não.	Perhaps it is/isn't.
Provavelmente.	Probably.
Provavelmente + (phrase with Indicative)	Probably . . .
É provável que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It is likely that . . .
É muito provável que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It is very likely that . . .
É pouco provável que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It is unlikely that . . .
É muito pouco provável que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It is highly unlikely that . . .
É possível.	It is possible.
É possível + (phrase with Infinitive)	It is possible to . . .
É possível que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It is possible that . . .
É impossível.	It is impossible.
É impossível + (phrase with Infinitive)	It is impossible to . . .
É impossível que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It is impossible to/that . . .
Não pode ser!	It can't be (possible)!
Não é possível que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It can't be possible to/that . . .

¹ These phrases can imply disbelief.

- **É possível marcar uma passagem para Londres no voo de amanhã de manhã?**
Is it possible to make a booking for tomorrow morning's flight to London?
- **No voo da manhã é impossível, está esgotado, mas no da tarde talvez, embora seja pouco provável nesta época do ano.**
On the morning flight it's not possible; it is fully booked. Perhaps on the afternoon flight, although it is unlikely at this time of the year.
- **Veja lá. Tenho que estar em Londres na quinta-feira.**
See what you can do. I have to be in London by Thursday.
- **Lamento, mas, afinal, também não é possível. Só quinta-feira de manhã.**
I am sorry but it is not possible either. Only Thursday morning.
- **Não pode ser! Será possível que com tantos voos diários, não me consegue arranjar nada antes de quinta-feira?**
It can't be! How can it be possible that with so many daily flights, you cannot find me anything before Thursday?
- **Lamento muito, mas é de todo impossível arranjar um voo mais cedo.**
I am very sorry, but it is absolutely impossible to find an earlier flight.

15.5 Logical conclusions

É lógico que + (phrase with Subjunctive)?	Is it logical that ... ?
Acha lógico que + (phrase with Subjunctive)?	Do you think/find it logical that ... ?
Portanto ...	Therefore ...
Por conseguinte ...	Therefore ...
Por consequência ...	As a consequence ...
É lógico que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It is logical that ...
É de esperar que + (phrase with Present Subjunctive)	It is to be expected that ...

Era de esperar que + (phrase with Past Subjunctive)	It would be expected that . . .
Não é lógico que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It is not logical that . . .
Não é de esperar que + (phrase with Present Subjunctive)	It is not be expected that . . .
Não era de esperar que + (phrase with Past Subjunctive)	It wouldn't be expected that . . .
Não tem lógica nenhuma que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	There is no logic at all in that . . .

– **Não é lógico que depois de tantas negociações se faça este investimento?**

Isn't it logical that at the end of so much negotiating we embark on this investment?

– **Não, não acho nada lógico, porque não temos garantias e ainda podemos perder muito dinheiro.**

I do not find it logical at all, because we have no guarantees and we can still lose a lot of money.

– **Mas as companhias com quem lidamos são de renome, por conseguinte, é de esperar que o investimento seja seguro.**

But we are dealing with companies with good reputations and, therefore, it is to be expected that the investment is safe.

15.6 Incomprehension and clarification

Não percebo.	}	I do not understand.
Não compreendo.		
Não entendo.		
Não estou a compreender.^B		
Não percebo/compreendo nada.		I do not understand at all.
Não percebo/entendo porque . . .		I do not understand why . . .
Pode(s) repetir?		Can you repeat it?
Pode(s) repetir mais devagar?		Can you repeat more slowly?

Pode(s) explicar melhor? Can you explain better?

Pode(s) esclarecer melhor? Can you be clearer?

– **Desculpe, mas não compreendo o que me está a dizer. Pode repetir, por favor?**

I am sorry but I do not understand what you are telling me. Can you repeat it, please?

– ...

...

– **Continuo a não perceber porque é que a encomenda não pode ser entregue hoje. Pode explicar melhor?**

I still do not understand why the order cannot be delivered today. Can you explain it better?

15.7 Certainty and uncertainty

Tenho a certeza. I am sure.

Tenho a certeza de que ... }
Estou certo/a de que ... } I am sure that ...

Estou seguro/a de que ... I am certain that ...

Não tenho a^B certeza. I am not sure.

Não tenho a^B certeza de que + I am not sure that ...
 (phrase with Subjunctive)

Não estou certo de que + I am not sure that ...
 (phrase with Subjunctive)

Duvido que + (phrase with Subjunctive) I doubt that ...

– **A Joana já terá enviado a encomenda?**

I wonder whether Joana has already sent the parcel?

– **Duvido. Ela disse que não estava certa se a poderia mandar anteontem ou na próxima semana.**

I doubt it. She said she was not sure whether she would be able to send it the day before yesterday or next week.

- **Estou certa de que não vai esperar pela próxima semana. Ela sabe como é urgente.**
I am sure she is not going to wait until next week. She knows how urgent it is.
- **Disso eu já não estou tão segura. Sabes como ela é esquecida.**
Of that I am not so sure. You know how forgetful she is.
- **Tens a certeza? Ela sempre me pareceu uma pessoa muito organizada.**
Are you sure? She has always struck me as a very organized person.

Judgement and evaluation

16.1 Expressing pleasure or liking

Prefiro ...	I prefer ...
Gosto de ...	I like ...
Adoro ...	I love ...
Que bom!	How nice!
Que bom que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	How nice that ...
Ainda bem que ...	It is good that ...
Estou satisfeito/a por + (phrase with Infinitive)	I am glad that ...
Estou satisfeito/a que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	I am glad that ...
Estou encantado/a por + (phrase with Infinitive)	I am delighted that ...
Estou encantado/a que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	I am delighted that ...
Tenho prazer em + (phrase with Infinitive)	I am pleased to ...
Tenho o prazer de ¹ + (phrase with Infinitive)	I am pleased to ...
Muito prazer. ¹	Pleased to meet you.
Encantado/a. ¹	Delighted to meet you.

¹ Formulas used in introductions and presentations (see 12.9).

- **Estou encantada por terem vindo. Tenho tanto prazer em os conhecer.**
I am delighted you came. I am so pleased to meet you.
- **Nós também estamos muito satisfeitos por nos encontrarmos finalmente. Adoramos conhecer outros ramos da família.**
We are also very pleased to finally meet you. We love to meet other branches of the family.
- **Ainda bem que vieram hoje, porque assim também podem ter o prazer de conhecer a minha sogra, que está cá de visita.**
It is good that you could come today because you can also have the pleasure of meeting my mother-in-law, who is spending some time with us.

16.2 Expressing displeasure or dislike

Não gosto.	I do not like it.
Não gosto muito de ...	I am not very fond of ...
Não gosto nada.	I do not like it at all.
Não gosto nada que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	I hate that ...
Detesto!	I hate it!
Que mau gosto!	What horrid taste!
Que horror!	How dreadful!
É horroroso!	It is horrid/dreadful!
É horrível.	It is dreadful/horrible.
É horrível que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It is dreadful that ...
Aborrece-me que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It upsets me that ...
Estou aborrecido/a por + (phrase with Infinitive)	I am upset because ...
Irrita-me que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It irritates me that ...

Embirro^B que + (phrase with Subjunctive) It annoys me that ...

Detesto que + (phrase with Subjunctive) } I hate that ...

Odeio que + (phrase with Subjunctive)

– **Que coisa horrorosa!**

What a horrid thing!

– **O que é?**

What is it?

– **É a prenda de Natal que a tia Aldegundes me mandou.**

É um pavor de mau gosto!

It's the Christmas present aunt Aldegundes sent me. It is the height of bad taste.

– **Realmente é um chapéu horrível. Onde é que se pode usar uma coisa dessas?**

It really is a dreadful hat. Where can one wear anything like that?

– **Embirro que me mandem prendas estúpidas e inúteis.**

Detesto aquela tia.

I hate to be sent stupid and useless presents. I hate that aunt.

– **Eu também não gosto muito dela. Que prenda terá para mim?**

I am not very fond of her either. What present will she have for me?

Enquiring
about
pleasure/
displeasure,
liking/dislike

16.3 Enquiring about pleasure/displeasure, liking/dislike

Gosta(s)?

Do you like it?

Gosta(s) de ... ?

Do you like ... ?

Está(s) satisfeito?

Are you pleased?

Está(s) satisfeito com ... ?

Are you pleased with ... ?

Não gosta(s)?

Don't you like it?

Não gosta(s) de ... ?

Don't you like ... ?

Não está(s) satisfeito?

Aren't you pleased?

Não está(s) satisfeito com ... ?

Aren't you pleased with ... ?

- **Gostava de umas sandálias de Verão.**
I would like a pair of summer sandals.
- **Prefere com ou sem salto?**
Do you prefer them with or without a heel?
- **Prefiro com um pouco de salto, mas não quero demasiado alto.**
I prefer them with a bit of a heel, but not too high.
- **Está satisfeita com estas?**
Are you happy with these?
- **Sim, gosto bastante destas, mas estão um pouco apertadas.**
Yes, I quite like these, but they are a little tight.
- **E com estas não está satisfeita? São de pele muito macia.**
And what about these, aren't you happy with them? They are in very soft leather.
- **Sim, estas são confortáveis. E gosto deste estilo. Pode mandar embrulhar.**
Yes, these are comfortable. And I also like this style. You can have them wrapped for me.

16.4 Enquiring about and expressing interest/lack of interest

Gosta(s) de ... ?	Do you like ... ?
Não gosta(s) de ... ?	Don't you like ... ?
Interessa-se/Interessas-te por ... ?	Are you interested in ... ?
Não se interessa por ... ?/Não te interessas por ... ?	Aren't you interested in ... ?
Deseja(s) ... ?	Would you like ... ?
Não deseja(s) ... ?	Wouldn't you like ... ?
Interessa-te/lhe + (phrase with Infinitive)?	Would you be interested in ... ?
Não te/lhe interessa + (phrase with Infinitive)?	Wouldn't you be interested in ... ?
É interessante.	It is interesting.
Interesso-me por ...	I am interested in ...

Tenho interesse por . . .	I am keen on . . .
Tenho curiosidade por . . .	I am keen on/I am curious about . . .
Não é de interesse.	It is of no interest.
Estou interessado/a em . . .	I am interested in . . .
Não me interessa.	I am not interested.
Não me interessa nada.	I am not interested at all.
Não tenho qualquer interesse.	I am not interested in the least.

- **Bom dia. Estou interessado num livro sobre o Brasil.**
Good morning. I am interested in a book on Brazil.
- **Deseja este aqui? É muito interessante. Tem muitas informações sobre os melhores hotéis e restaurantes.**
Would you like this one? It is very interesting. It has a lot of information on the best hotels and restaurants.
- **Esse tipo de livro não tem interesse para mim. Tenho muita curiosidade pela antropologia do Brasil.**
I am not interested in that type of book. I am very keen on Brazilian anthropology.
- **E esse aí, não lhe interessa? É uma publicação da Universidade do Rio de Janeiro.**
What about that one, wouldn't you be interested? It is a University of Rio publication.
- **Não, esse não me interessa nada. É uma edição muito antiga.**
No, that one is of no interest at all. It's a very old edition.

16.5 Expressing surprise

Que surpresa!	What a surprise!
Quem diria?!	Who would believe it?!
Não era de esperar!	It was not (to be) expected!
Não era de esperar que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It was not (to be) expected that . . .
Meus Deus!	Good Lord!
Minha Nossa Senhora!^B	

- **Professor Lacerda, que surpresa! Não esperava nada vê-lo aqui.**
Professor Lacerda, what a surprise! I didn't expect to see you here.
- **É a Margarida Canavarro, não é? Do curso de '95?**
You are Margarida Canavarro, aren't you? Class of '95?
- **Pois sou. Quem diria que o havia de encontrar aqui em Manchester.**
Yes, I am. Who could tell that I would meet you here in Manchester.
- **Na realidade eu não era para estar aqui, mas resolvi vir a este congresso de Fonética.**
In fact, I hadn't planned to come but I decided to attend this conference on Phonetics.

16.6 Expressing hope

Oxalá!	I hope so!
Oxalá + (phrase with Subjunctive)	I hope . . .
Quem dera! ^B	I do hope so!
Se Deus quiser.	God willing. All being well.
Deus permita que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	I hope to God that . . .
Era bom que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	It would be nice if . . .
Deus nos livre!	Heaven forbid!
Deus nos livre que + (phrase with Subjunctive)	Heaven forbid that . . .

Note: Sentences expressing hope are equivalent to a wish and require a Subjunctive (see 7.3).

- **Oxalá façam boa viagem.**
I hope you have a good journey.
- **Se Deus quiser não vai haver novidade.**
All being well, there will be no problems.

- **Tenho tanto medo das viagens longas de noite. Deus permita que não haja um acidente.**
I am so scared of long journeys at night. I hope to God there won't be any accidents.
- **Deus nos livre, mãe. Vai ver que vai tudo correr bem.**
Heaven forbid, mother. Everything will be all right, you will see.
- **Quem dera!^B**
I do hope so!

16.7 Enquiring about and expressing satisfaction/dissatisfaction

Está(s) satisfeito?	Are you satisfied/pleased?
Ficaste/ficou satisfeito?	Were you satisfied/pleased?
Agrada-te/lhe + (phrase with Infinitive)	Would you like to ... ?
Estou satisfeito/a.	I am satisfied/pleased.
Estou satisfeito/a com ...	I am satisfied/pleased with ...
Fiquei satisfeito/a.	I was satisfied/pleased.
Fiquei satisfeito/a com ...	I was satisfied/pleased by ...
Estou contente.	I am happy/contented.
Estou contente com ...	I am happy/contented with ...
Fiquei contente.	I was happy.
Fiquei contente com ...	I was happy with ...
Não estou satisfeito/a.	I am not satisfied/pleased.
Não estou satisfeito/a com ...	I am not happy with ...
Não estou nada satisfeito/a com ...	I am not happy at all with ...

- **O Sr. Dr.¹ ficou satisfeito com o hotel que lhe reservámos?**
Were you pleased with the hotel we booked for you, Sir?

- **Sim, fiquei relativamente satisfeito. O quarto era confortável, com todas as comodidades, agradou-me a localização, próximo do metropolitano, mas não fiquei nada contente com a conta.**

Yes, I was reasonably pleased – the room was comfortable, with all the facilities, I appreciated its nearness to the underground, but I was not at all happy with the bill.

¹ Note the use of the title both as form of address and subject. The title indicates that the person has an academic degree. This information is not reflected in the English equivalent, 'Sir'.

16.8 Expressing disappointment

Estou desiludido/a com ...	}	I am disappointed with ...
Estou desapontado/a com ...		
Estou decepcionado/a com ...		
Fiquei desiludido/a com ...	}	I was disappointed with ...
Fiquei desapontado/a com ...		
Fiquei decepcionado/a com ...		

- **Estou muito desiludido com o hotel Ratz. Tem muita fama, mas a qualidade do serviço é fraca e as diárias são caras.**
I am very disappointed with the Ratz Hotel. It has a good reputation, but the service is poor and the daily rates are high.
- **Da última vez que lá fiquei também fiquei desapontado com o restaurante. O serviço foi demorado e a comida veio fria.**
The last time I stayed there I was also disappointed with the restaurant. The service was slow and the food was cold.

16.9 Enquiring about and expressing worry or fear

Está(s) preocupado/a?	Are you worried?	
Está(s) nervoso/a?	Are you nervous?	
Tens/Tem medo?	}	Are you afraid?
Está(s) com medo?		

Estou preocupado/a.	I am worried.
Estou nervoso/a.	I am nervous/anxious.
Estou uma pilha de nervos.	I am a bag of nerves.
Fico uma pilha de nervos	I become a bag of nerves.
Tenho medo.	I am afraid.
Tenho medo de + (phrase with Infinitive)	I am afraid to . . .
Tenho um terror medonho de + (phrase with Infinitive)	I am dreadfully scared of . . .
Ai, que medo!	Gosh! I'm scared!
Que medo!	How frightening!
Que susto!	What a fright!
Estou a tremer de medo.	I am shaking with fear.
Estou gelado/a de medo.	I am frozen with fear.
Estou aterrorizado/a.	I am terrified.

- **Estou a tremer de medo!**
I am shaking with fear!
- **Que aconteceu?**
What happened?
- **Fui lá fora passear o cão e ouvi passos atrás de mim.**
I went out to walk the dog and I heard footsteps behind me.
- **Ai, que medo! Eu tenho um terror medonho de andar na rua sozinha à noite.**
Gosh, how frightening! I am dreadfully scared of going out at night all by myself.
- **Eu não costumo ter medo quando vou com o cão, mas desta vez fiquei gelada porque os passos vinham para aqui.**
Usually I am not afraid when I go out with the dog, but this time I was frozen with fear because the footsteps were coming in this direction.
- **Não me digas isso, que fico uma pilha de nervos.**
Don't say that or I'll become a bag of nerves.

16.10 Enquiring about and expressing preference

Prefere(s) ... ?	Do you prefer ... ?
Qual prefere(s)?	Which do you prefer?
Por qual tens/tem preferência?	Which would you prefer?
De qual gosta(s) mais?	Which do you like best?
Não prefere(s) ... ?	Wouldn't you prefer ... ?
Não gosta(s) mais de ... ?	Wouldn't you like ... more?
Prefiro ...	I prefer ...
Tenho preferência por ...	I would prefer ...
Gosto mais de ...	I like ... best.

- **Boa tarde. Tem blusas de malha?**
Good afternoon. Have you got any knitted tops?
- **Prefere de lã ou de algodão?**
Do you prefer wool or cotton?
- **Gosto mais de algodão.**
I like cotton best.
- **Tem preferência por manga curta ou comprida?**
Would you prefer short or long sleeves?
- **Prefiro de manga comprida.**
I prefer long sleeves.

16.11 Expressing gratitude

Obrigado/a.	Thank you.
Muito obrigado/a.	Thank you very much.
Agradeço muito.	I am very grateful.
Estou muito grato/a.	I am very grateful.
Bem haja(s).¹	God bless.
Deus te/o/a ajude.	God bless you.
Deus te/lhe pague.	God bless you.
Que Deus te/o/a abençoe.	May God bless you.

¹ Used only in European Portuguese.

- **Muito obrigado por me trazer à estação.**
Thanks a lot for driving me to the station.
- **Não tem de quê, eu é que agradeço a companhia.**
It was nothing. I am the one who is grateful for the company.
- **Não calcula o jeito que me deu, senão tinha perdido o comboio. Bem haja.**
You can't imagine how convenient it was, otherwise I would have missed the train. God bless you.
- **Igualmente.**
And you.

16.12 Expressing sympathy

Tenho pena.	I am sorry.
Tenho muita pena.	} I am very sorry.
Lamento muito.	
Os meus pêsames.¹	My sympathy.
Sinceros pêsames.¹	In deepest sympathy.

¹ Formulae used in messages of sympathy.

- **Lamento muito que o teu marido não esteja cá por ocasião da morte da tua sogra. Conta comigo no que for necessário.**
I am very sorry your husband is not here on the passing away of your mother-in-law. You can count on me for any help.
- **Muito obrigada. Agradecia que me ajudasses a tratar da correspondência.**
Thank you very much. I would be grateful if you could help me with the correspondence.
- **Está aqui um cartão de pêsames que veio da Madeira: 'Sentimos muito a morte da D. Jacinta. Sinceros pêsames. Abel e Carolina Silva.'**
Here is a sympathy card from Madeira: 'Our deepest sympathy on the passing away of Mrs (Correia).¹ Abel and Carolina Silva.'

¹ We are assuming that the deceased lady was called Mrs Jacinta Correia (see 12.10.4).

16.13 Expressing happiness and unhappiness

Estou feliz por + (phrase with Infinitive)	I am happy to . . .
Estou contente por + (phrase with Infinitive)	I am happy to . . .
Estou radiante.	I am overjoyed.
Estou louco/a de alegria.	I am over the moon.

- **Estou louca de alegria – conseguimos comprar o apartamento que queríamos no Algarve.**
I am over the moon – we managed to buy the apartment we wanted in the Algarve.
- **Parabéns! Eu também fico muito contente por vocês.**
Congratulations! I am also very happy for you.
- **Mas ainda estou mais radiante por termos conseguido vender a nossa casa em Inglaterra.**
But I am even more overjoyed because we managed to sell our house in England.

16.14 Apologizing

Desculpe.	I am sorry. I beg your pardon.
Perdão.	I beg your pardon.
Com licença.	Excuse me. With your permission.

- **Com licença. Deixem passar, por favor.**
Excuse me. Please let me through.
- **Desculpe, mas eu estava à frente.**
I am sorry, but I was ahead of you.
- **Perdão, a senhora não estava na bicha.^B**
I beg your pardon, but you were not in the queue.
- **Claro que estava! Estava ao lado deste cavalheiro.**
Of course I was. I was standing next to this gentleman.

16.15 Enquiring about and expressing approval/ disapproval

Acha(s) bem?	Do you approve?
Acha(s) mal?	Do you disapprove?
Concorda(s)?	Do you agree?
Não acha(s) bem?	Don't you approve?
Não acha(s) mal?	You do not disapprove?
Não concorda(s)?	Don't you agree?
Sim.	Yes.
Pois!	Quite!
Pois claro.	Of course.
Sim senhor!	Well done!
Muito bem.	Very well. Well done.
Parabéns!	Congratulations!
Bravo!	Bravo!
Não.	No.
Não senhor!	Absolutely not!
Claro que não.	Of course not.
Não pode ser.	It can't be.
Nunca!	Never!
Jamais!	Never ever!
Discordo.	I disagree.
Discordo plenamente.	I absolutely disagree.

– Então fica acordado um investimento na ETC da ordem dos €2.500.000. Acha bem?

We then agree upon an investment of €2.5 million in ETC.
Do you approve?

Enquiring
about and
expressing
approval/
disapproval

- **Claro que não. Eu discordo plenamente.**
Of course not. I absolutely disagree.
- **Mas, na última reunião, o Sr. Director sugeriu que se fizesse um investimento na ETC . . .**
But at our last meeting you advised that we should make an investment in ETC . . .
- **Pois fiz, mas não de €2.500.000.**
Quite! But not of €2.5 million.
- **Então o Sr. Director acha mal?**
Do you disapprove, then?
- **Pois claro que acho! Eu aconselhei um pequeno investimento inicial, atendendo à insistência dos outros membros do conselho directivo.**
Of course I do! I advised a small initial investment, owing to the insistence of the other members of the Board.
- **Não senhor! O Sr. Director falou num investimento considerável.**
No, you didn't! You spoke of a considerable investment.
- **Eu? Naquela firma? Nunca!**
Me? In that firm? Never!

16.16 Expressing appreciation

Muito bem.	Very well.
Muito bom.	Very good.
Excelente.	Excellent.
Muito bonito.	Very pretty.
Que bonito!	How beautiful!
Maravilhoso.	Marvellous.
Extraordinário.	Outstanding.

- **Já esteve em Sintra?**
Have you already been to Sintra?

– **Ainda não. É bonito?**

Not yet. Is it nice?

– **É lindo. O Palácio da Vila e o Palácio da Pena são extraordinariamente interessantes, e a paisagem da serra é maravilhosa.**

It is beautiful. The Palácio da Vila and the Pena Palace are extremely interesting and the mountain landscape is wonderful.

– **Muito bem, então vou já marcar lugar numa excursão.**

Great! Then I am going to book a seat on a tour straight away.

16.17 Expressing regret

Lamento, mas ... I am sorry but ...

Lamento muito. I am very sorry.

Estou arrependido/a de + (phrase with Infinitive) I regret ...

Se eu soubesse + (phrase with Imperfect or Conditional) If I had known ...

Se pudesse voltar atrás + (phrase with Imperfect or Conditional) If I could turn back time ...

– **Estou tão arrependido de ter ido a Sintra.**

I regret so much having gone to Sintra.

– **A^B sério? Porquê?**

Really? Why?

– **Porque caí duma muralha no Castelo dos Mouros e torci um pé.**

Because I fell from a wall in the Moors' Castle and twisted my ankle.

– **Não diga. Se eu soubesse não o tinha encorajado a lá ir.**

You don't say. If I had known, I wouldn't have encouraged you to go.

– **Pois é. Se pudesse voltar atrás tinha antes ido à praia.**

Quite. If I could turn back time, I would have gone to the beach instead.

16.18 Expressing indifference

Não tem importância.	It doesn't matter. Never mind.
Não tem importância nenhuma.	It doesn't matter at all.
Tanto faz.	It makes no difference.
É-me indiferente.	It's all the same to me.
Não me importa.	I don't mind.
Não me importa nada.	I don't mind at all.
Não me rala nada.¹	I do not care a bit.

¹ Not used in Brazilian Portuguese.

- **Prefere carne ou peixe?**
Do you prefer meat or fish?
- **Tanto faz.**
It makes no difference.
- **E para beber? Prefere vinho branco ou tinto?**
And to drink? Do you prefer white or red wine?
- **É-me indiferente.**
It's all the same to me.
- **Nesse caso, importa-se que eu escolha?**
In that case, do you mind if I choose?
- **Não me importa nada. Recebi a conta do hospital e perdi o apetite.**
I don't mind at all. I received the hospital bill and lost my appetite.
- **Isso não tem importância. Vai ver que amanhã já está melhor.**
Never mind. You will see that tomorrow you will feel better.

16.19 Accusing

Foste tu que ...	} It was you who ...
Foi você/o senhor/a senhora que ...	

A culpa é tua/sua.

It is your fault.

A culpa é toda tua/sua.

It is all your fault.

Tu és o/a culpado/a de ...

Você/o senhor é o culpado de ...

You are to blame for ...

Enquiring
about and
expressing
capability/
incapability

– **O senhor não vê por onde vai?**

Can't you see where you are going?

– **Eu? O senhor é que bateu no meu carro.**

Me? It was you who hit my car.

– **Não senhor. O senhor é que é o culpado deste acidente.**

Not at all. You are to blame for this accident.

– **Perdão, mas a culpa é toda sua. Devia ter parado.**

I beg your pardon, but it is all your fault. You should have stopped.

– **Desculpe, mas foi o senhor que entrou no cruzamento sem olhar.**

Excuse me, but it was you who entered the junction without looking.

16.20 Enquiring about and expressing capability/ incapability

Sabe(s) + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Can you/Do you know how to ... ?

Pode(s) + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Can you ... ?

É(s) capaz de + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Can you/Are you capable of ... ?

Tens/Tem coragem de + (phrase with Infinitive)?

Have you got the courage to ... ?

Sei + (phrase with Infinitive)

I can/know how to ...

Posso + (phrase with Infinitive)

I can ...

Sou capaz de + (phrase with Infinitive)

I am capable of ...

Tenho coragem de + (phrase with Infinitive)

I have the courage to ...

Não sei + (phrase with Infinitive)

I cannot/don't know how to ...

Não sou capaz de + (phrase with Infinitive)

I cannot ...

Sou incapaz de + (phrase with Infinitive)

I am incapable of ...

Não tenho coragem de + (phrase with Infinitive)

I do not have the courage to ...

Não posso + (phrase with Infinitive)

I can't ...

– **Posso entrar?**

Can I come in?

– **Podes. Entra!**

Yes, please do.

– **Podes dar-me uma ajuda?**

Can you give me a hand?

– **Claro, se puder.**

Of course, if I can.

– **Como sabes falar alemão, és capaz de me traduzir esta carta?**

As you know how to speak German, can you translate this letter?

– **Agora não posso. Tenho muito que fazer. Talvez à hora do almoço. Pode ser?**

At the moment I can't. I am too busy. Perhaps at lunchtime. Is that all right?

PART III

Brazilian variants

Brazilian essential grammar and language functions

The numbering in this section corresponds to those points marked with ^B in Parts I and II. Entries in this section are thus preceded by the prefix ‘B’.

B1–11 Brazilian essential grammar

Entries refer only to variants found in Brazilian Portuguese.

B12–16 Language functions

As second person pronouns are seldom used in Brazilian Portuguese, remember to transform the examples in Part II into sentences with the verb in the third person, usually preceded by **você**, **vocês** or **o senhor**, **a senhora**, **os senhores**, **as senhoras** or any other third person subject. Many examples already illustrate the use of third person, but, obviously, not all of them, as second person pronouns and verbal forms can be useful in other parts of the Portuguese-speaking world, even in some areas of Brazil.

Also, do not forget that Brazilian Portuguese Imperative forms are usually borrowed from the Present Subjunctive (see B7.4.1); therefore, examples with ‘true’ Imperatives using a second person must be transformed into sentences with the polite Imperative deriving from the Present Subjunctive.

Pronunciation and spelling

Portuguese variants and spelling

There are some pronunciation and spelling variations among European Portuguese, Brazilian and even African Portuguese. These, however, are not wide enough to prevent communication. Another important factor, which contributes towards variations within Portuguese, is the inevitable lexical preference displayed by speakers of each region or country.

It is interesting to note that African Portuguese, especially the Portuguese spoken in Angola and Mozambique, seems to sit roughly in the middle of the variation spectrum between European and Brazilian Portuguese. There are historical factors which explain this, but they do not fall within the scope of an ‘essential grammar’ such as the present work. African Portuguese is understood to be the Portuguese spoken in the PALOP countries (*Países Africanos de Língua Oficial Portuguesa*) – Angola, Cape Verde, Guinea-Bissau, Mozambique and S. Tomé e Príncipe – all former Portuguese colonies which became independent after 1974 and which adopted Portuguese as their official language.

The term ‘African Portuguese’ is by definition a wide generalization, as wide as Brazilian Portuguese. When considering such vast countries and continents, there is bound to be a reasonable degree of variation from area to area. Variation is also evident in the various regions of a country as small as Portugal, although, as stated above, that should not hinder communication.

Spelling also reflects this variation. A number of orthographic agreements have been signed, the latest in 1992, trying, with varying degrees of success, to bring together the spelling adopted by the different Portuguese-speaking countries. This, however, will only come into force after having been approved in the respective parliaments of all signatories, which may only happen some years hence. In any case, most printed material in Portuguese,

presently in circulation, follows the guidelines established by the 1973 agreement and considerable time will elapse before these are out-numbered by new publications adopting the 1992 orthographic agreement. For that reason, it was decided that the present work should follow the 1973 guidelines. Indeed, many Portuguese and Brazilian native speakers vow to maintain the present orthography, as that is the one they are used to. In all likelihood, the 1992 agreement will only be fully implemented and used with the new generation, which is now entering primary school.

In general terms, the main concern of the 1992 agreement was to simplify and bring closer together the spelling adopted in all Portuguese-speaking countries but, at the same time, enabling it to reflect more closely the actual pronunciation used in each. For example, at the moment, the word **jacto** ‘jet’ is spelt with a **c** in European Portuguese but simply **jato** in the Brazilian variant, although the pronunciation is the same in both cases. When the 1992 agreement comes into force, the **c** will also disappear from European Portuguese spelling.

The case of words like **recepção** ‘reception’ is different. At present, the same spelling is adopted in all Portuguese-speaking countries; however, after the 1992 orthographic agreement comes into force, the **p** will be maintained in Brazilian Portuguese, because it is clearly pronounced there, but it will disappear from European Portuguese, because it is not pronounced in Portugal. The same will happen to the word **excepcional** ‘exceptional’ and a few others. Curiously, the word **excepção** ‘exception’ has a slightly different story. Whereas in European Portuguese it will also lose the **p**, in Brazilian Portuguese it has already been dropped because it is not pronounced.

Words such as **facto** ‘fact’ will maintain the **c** in European Portuguese, whereas in Brazil it has already been removed, hence **fato**, as the **c** is not pronounced there.

None of this should worry the learner unduly, because it is not of crucial importance at this stage, and orthography in all countries is going through a period of transition. Nor is the number of words affected significant enough to cause concern to the beginner, or even the intermediate-level student.

Therefore, and to generalize, the main difference in terms of orthography or spelling, when the 1992 agreement comes into force, is that the **c** or **p** before a consonant (**c**, **ç** or **t**) which is a remnant of the Portuguese Latin root, will be maintained if pronounced and omitted if not pronounced. There are also some modifications regarding hyphenation but these are best

dealt with using an updated dictionary, which is good advice, anyway, when learning a new language.

In this essential grammar we have tried, as far as possible, to keep away from ‘controversial’ words and examples, as our objective is to provide the user with a brief, clear and neutral manual which, above all, stresses the general rule more than the exception, and the common ground of the Portuguese variants, rather than their idiosyncrasies.

Pronunciation

The two main differences in patterns of pronunciation between Brazilian and European Portuguese lie in the tendency to open most vowels in the former and a difference in rhythm or intonation. Brazilian Portuguese is more ‘musical’ and uses fewer fricative sounds, as the final *s* is usually pronounced as ‘*s*’ or ‘*z*’ instead of ‘*sh*’ or ‘*j*’ as in the European variant. European Portuguese may sound a little harsher to the beginner because of the more strongly marked contrast between the open vowels in the stressed syllable and the closed and unvoiced vowels in unstressed and final syllables.

Some vowels and consonants are pronounced differently depending on their position in the word, as we point out below.

B I. I Vowels

B I. I. I Oral vowels

	<i>Example</i>	<i>Pronounced as</i>
e in final position	cheque	shaky
o stressed o before m or n	Antônio	took

BI.2 Consonants

d before **i**, or **e** when pronounced as **i**

verdade edgy

l final position = diphthongs

dia geography

au, **eu**, **iu**

Portugal Gower

papel phew
(approximate)

s at end of syllable/word if followed by unvoiced consonant (**t**, **c**, **f**, **p**.)

funil Europe

estou tourist

at end of syllable/word if followed by voiced consonant (**b**, **d**, **g**, **m**, **n**, **r**)

mosca mosque

fósforos phosphor

meus pais vespers

Lisboa Lisbon

rasgar let's go

mais dá Dresden

mesmo mesmerize

cisne Osnabruck

Israel Israel

t before **i**, or **e** when pronounced as **i**

tio cheek

pente peachy

z final

luz loss

BI.3 Diphthongs**BI.3.2 Nasal diphthongs**

Brazilian nasal diphthongs seem to have more nasal resonance than their European Portuguese equivalents.

Nouns

B2.4 Diminutives and augmentatives

B2.4.1 Diminutives are used more frequently in Brazilian Portuguese than in other variants.

B2.4.3 Brazilian Portuguese favours diminutives in **-inho** and **-zinho** in preference to **-ito**.

Articles

B3.2 Use of the definite article

B3.2.1 *With first names*

In Brazilian Portuguese the use of the definite article is optional with forenames and surnames, especially if referring to some well-known personality:

João disse que vinha mais tarde.

João said he was coming later.

O Néelson chega amanhã.

Nelson arrives tomorrow.

Jorge Amado é dos autores brasileiros mais conhecidos.

Jorge Amado is one of the best-known Brazilian writers.

B3.2.2 *With titles*

The definite article is frequently omitted before the title **D.** (*dona*).

D. Margarida já saiu. Mrs . . . has already left.

B3.2.5 *Before possessive adjectives*

The definite article is also frequently omitted before possessive adjectives:

Nosso carro quebrou. Our car has broken down.

Adjectives

B4.1.1.2 Adjectives ending in **-eu** have a feminine form in **-eia**:

In Brazilian Portuguese the word **européia** is written with an acute accent.

B4.3 Degree

B4.3.1 *The comparative*

tão . . . quanto^B is the comparative preferred in Brazil to express equality.

B4.3.3 *Special comparative and superlative forms*

In Brazilian Portuguese, **menor** ‘smaller’ is the correct comparative for **pequeno** ‘small’. The equivalent superlative relative is **o menor**.

Pronouns

B5.1 Personal pronouns

B5.1.1 Subject pronouns

Tu and vós are hardly ever used in Brazil. They have been superseded by *ocê, vocês, o senhor* and its variants *a senhora, os senhores, as senhoras*. Tu may be used in some regions of the south and the northeast of Brazil, sometimes as an indefinite subject such as ‘one’, ‘anyone’, ‘a person’. If used, it is frequently combined with a verbal form in the third person singular, instead of second person. This is an extremely colloquial use of the pronoun and, as it is grammatically incorrect, it should be avoided.

Tu vai ao banco e todo mundo quer saber.

You go to the bank and everybody wants to know about it.

B5.1.1.1 As a rule, personal pronouns are more frequently used in Brazilian Portuguese than in European Portuguese.

B5.1.2 Direct object pronouns

Vos is hardly ever used in Brazil. Vocês is the preferred form. O senhor, a senhora, os senhores, as senhoras can also be used as direct object pronouns. Te (singular only) is used as a direct object in colloquial speech referring back to *ocê*:

Ela viu você no teatro.

She saw you at the theatre.

Eles convidaram os senhores para jantar.

They have invited you for dinner.

Nós te procuramos lá, mas você não nos viu.¹

We looked for you there but you didn't see us.

- ¹ This colloquial use of *te* and *você* in the same sentence, referring to the same grammatical subject is considered incorrect. This use is only possible in very informal speech.

B5.1.2.1 In Brazilian Portuguese, direct object pronouns follow roughly the same rules as in European Portuguese, but they enjoy far greater freedom in matters of word order.

- (e) *With single infinitives* it is possible to place the pronoun after the verb, even in a negative sentence:

Para não incomodá-lo mais ela preferiu se calar.

In order not to upset him further, she decided to be quiet.

- (f) *In phrases where a main verb is used as an auxiliary* the pronoun can also come after the main verb of the sentence, be it in the Infinitive or Present Participle, even if it is a negative sentence:

Ela não queria vê-lo mais.

She didn't want to see him again.

- (g) *In phrases where a main verb is used as an auxiliary* it is also possible to place the pronoun between that auxiliary and the proper main verb in the sentence/clause, usually an Infinitive:

Eles querem nos ver imediatamente.

They want to see us immediately.

- (h) *In compound tenses* it is also possible to place the pronoun between the auxiliary and the main verb, usually a Participle:

As crianças tinham se perdido no centro da cidade.

The children had got lost in the centre of town.

- (i) *When two or more verbs share the same subject pronoun*, the pronoun only needs to be stated once, followed by the verbs:

Heitor a encontrou e levou para casa.

Heitor found it and took it home.

B5.1.2.2 (d) In Brazilian Portuguese *sempre* can only mean 'always'. The subject pronoun *você* followed by third person of the verbal form is also preferred:

Você sempre a leva para Leiria?

Do you always take her to Leiria?

Sempre o vi na biblioteca ontem.

I saw *him* in the library all day yesterday.

B5.1.2.3 With Future and Conditional tenses it is possible to place the pronoun before the verb in main affirmative sentences instead of fitting it between the stem and the ending, as is the norm in European Portuguese:

Nós o receberemos com muito gosto.

We will receive it with pleasure.

Rita nos reconheceria em qualquer lugar.

Rita would recognize us anywhere.

B5.1.3 Indirect object pronouns

These follow roughly the same rules as direct object pronouns. *Vos* is hardly ever used in Brazil. *Vocês* is the preferred form but in this case it needs to be introduced by a preposition. The same applies to *o senhor*, *a senhora*, *os senhores*, *as senhoras*, used in more formal circumstances. *Te* (singular only) is used as an indirect object in colloquial speech and refers back to *ocê*:

Quem deu esse presente para você?

Who gave you that present?

Eu escrevi uma carta para vocês.

I have written a letter to you.

O empregado dá a chave do quarto aos senhores.

The attendant gives you the bedroom key.

Não te disse que ela vinha?

Didn't I tell you she would come?

B5.1.5 Prepositional pronouns

Ti, *si* and *vós* are hardly ever used in Brazil. *Você* and *vocês* are the preferred equivalent forms:

Tenho um presente para você. I have a present for you.

Tenho presentes para vocês. I have presents for you.

Si in Brazilian Portuguese has a reflexive quality.

Ela é egoísta. Só pensa em si.

She is selfish. She only cares about *herself*.

Ele está em outro planeta! Vive falando consigo mesmo!

He lives on another planet! He is always talking *to himself*!

B5.1.5.2 With the prepositions *com*, *em* and *de*, some prepositional pronouns change their form:

com + *mim* = *comigo* *com* + *nós* = *conosco*¹

com + *ti* = *contigo*

¹ Note the Brazilian spelling.

Consigno and *convosco* are not used in Brazilian Portuguese.

B5.1.6 Reflexive pronouns

These follow roughly the same rules as direct object pronouns. *Te* and *vos* are seldom used in Brazil. *Se* is the preferred equivalent form in both cases as it corresponds to third person singular and plural:

Você se preocupa em demasia. You worry too much.

Vocês se levantam muito cedo. You get up very early.

B5.2 Possessive pronouns and adjectives

In Brazilian Portuguese, the definite article is frequently omitted before possessive adjectives but there is a preference for using the definite article with possessive pronouns, especially in structures containing the verb *ser* and when emphasis is on an item one wishes to distinguish from another:

Possessive adjective

Minhas malas são pesadas.

My suitcases are heavy.

Possessive pronoun

As malas pesadas são as minhas (não as leves).

The heavy suitcases are mine (not the light ones).

Note: *As malas pesadas são minhas*, without the definite article, makes the same statement but without stressing that it is the heavy cases, as opposed to the light ones.

B5.2.1 Possessive adjectives

(O) **teu**, (a) **tua**, (os) **teus**, (as) **tuas** and especially (o) **vosso**, (a) **vossa**, (os) **vossos**, (as) **vossas** are seldom used in Brazil. (O) **seu**, (a) **sua**, (os) **seus**, (as) **suas** are the preferred equivalent forms and correspond to the personal pronouns **ocê**, **ocês**. In a colloquial register, it is also possible to use **de ocê**, **de ocês** as possessive adjectives.

Sua filha é muito simpática.

Your daughter is very nice.

Vocês saíram com seus amigos.

You went out with your friends.

B5.2.2 Possessive pronouns

O **teu**, a **tua**, os **teus**, as **tuas** and o **vosso**, a **vossa**, os **vossos**, as **vossas** are seldom used in Brazil. O **seu**, a **sua**, os **seus**, as **suas** are the preferred equivalent forms and correspond to the personal pronouns **ocê**, **ocês**. In a colloquial register, it is also possible to use **o/a/os/as de ocê**, **o/a/os/as de ocês**.

Essa mala é a sua (não aquela).

This is your suitcase (not the other one). (selection)

Essas malas são nossas, mas aquelas são as de vocês.

These suitcases are ours but *those are yours*. (selection)

Essas malas são nossas, mas aquelas são de vocês.

These suitcases are ours but those are yours. (possession only)

Numerals

B6.1 Cardinal, ordinal and multiplicative numbers

As a rule these coincide in all variants of Portuguese, but in Brazilian Portuguese, some cardinals are written differently:

14 **quatorze or catorze**

16 **dezesseis**

17 **dezessete**

19 **dezenove**

Verbs

The main difference between Brazilian Portuguese and other variants of the language is that in Brazil ‘true’ second person verbal forms are seldom used, because, as seen above (B5.1.1), **tu** and **vós** have been replaced by **ocê** and **ocês** (also **o senhor, a senhora, os senhores, as senhoras**) which require verbal forms in the third person. Some modern grammars and language courses in Brazilian Portuguese as a foreign language have even ceased to register second person verbal forms.

B7.4 Imperative mood

B7.4.1 Conjugation

In Brazilian Portuguese, as subject pronouns **tu** and **vós** are seldom used (see B5.1.1), all forms of the Imperative are borrowed from the Present Subjunctive.

B7.6 Present participle

Estar + Present Participle is the preferred form for Progressive tenses:

Eu estava trabalhando quando você me interrompeu.

I was working when you disturbed me.

B7.12 Reflexive verbs

As second person pronouns are seldom used in Brazilian Portuguese (B5.1.1, B5.1.6, B7), second person forms are also seldom used with these verbs.

B7.12.1.2 In Brazilian Portuguese when the reflexive pronoun stands between the auxiliary and the main verb, it does not require a hyphen (see B5.1.2.1g):

Posso me sentar aqui? Can I sit here?

B7.12.1.3 In Brazilian Portuguese, with Future and Conditional tenses, it is possible to place the pronoun before the verb in main positive sentences instead of fitting it between the stem and the ending, as is the norm in European Portuguese (see B5.1.2.3):

Eles se arrependerão disso.

They will regret it.

As crianças se cansariam muito depressa.

The children would soon be tired.

Note: Although the Conditional is used more frequently in Brazilian Portuguese than in the European variant of the language, the Future is extremely rare.

Prepositions

B10.4 Verbs followed by a preposition

In colloquial Brazilian Portuguese **ir em** is preferred when expressing place being visited, usually a local place. Some grammarians, however, consider this use incorrect:

Este Verão eu vou em Araxá.

I am going to Araxá this Summer.

(*also p'ra Araxá*, which is rather colloquial)

As a rule, in Brazilian Portuguese the preposition **de** is omitted when the verb **precisar** is followed by an infinitive.

Preciso ir ao supermercado.

I need to go to the supermarket

When the verb **precisar** is followed by a noun, or by a pronoun or equivalent, the preposition **de** must be used, just like in European Portuguese:

Preciso de farinha.

I need some flour.

Preciso de você.

I need you.

Additional notes on Brazilian Portuguese usage

B11.1 Gente/a gente

In colloquial Brazilian Portuguese **gente** can also mean ‘folks’. But remember that it cannot be used as a subject pronoun – it is a vocative:

Ele fez isso de propósito, gente.

He did that on purpose, folks.

B11.4 A/para

In Brazilian Portuguese the preposition **em**, in colloquial speech, can convey both meanings.

Eu vou em São Paulo em viagem de negócios.

(and I am coming back soon)

Eu vou em São Paulo.

(one assumes that I do not know when I will be back)

Note: It is also possible to say **para**.

B11.11 Prepositions with means of transport

Some means of transport have different names in Brazilian Portuguese:

de **ônibus, metro, trólebus, trem**

by bus, underground, tram, train

B11.12 Word order

B11.12.1 Pronouns and verbs

In Brazilian Portuguese word order rules for object pronouns are not as rigid as in European Portuguese (see above, B5.1.2.1):

Ela me telefonou e escreveu uma carta.

She phoned *me* and sent *me* a letter.

Ela tinha me escrito uma carta.

She had sent *me* a letter.

Ela me escreverá uma carta.¹

She will send *me* a letter.

Ela me escreveria uma carta.

She would send *me* a letter.

¹ This example is only for purposes of illustration, as the future Tense is seldom used in Brazilian Portuguese (see B7.12.1.3).

B11.12.5 Adverbs

(c) Adverbs of time or place are placed before or after verbs:

Sempre is never used in Brazilian Portuguese with the meaning of ‘finally’, regardless of its position in the phrase:

Eu viajo sempre de avião. I always travel by plane.

Eu vou sempre à China. I always go to China.

Eu sempre vou à China. I always go to China.

Socializing

B12.1 General greetings

B12.1.1 *Informal*

Oi! Hello!, Hi!, Hey!

Oi is the most used form for ‘hello’ in Brazil. It can be used to open up a conversation.

- **Oi! Você tem a revista *Veja*?**
Hey! Have you got *Veja* magazine?
- **Não, já vendi tudo.**
No, I am sold out.

Oi can also be used to show that one is paying attention when being addressed by another person:

- **Viviane! Você me faz um favor?**
Viviane! Will you do me a favour?
- **Oi, pois não!**
Why, of course!

Viva is almost never used in Brazilian Portuguese.

B12.2 Taking leave

B12.2.1 *Informal*

Adeus in Brazil is used mostly in poetry and other literature. It is seldom used in colloquial communication unless in stories or songs. The most

common term for farewell in Brazilian Portuguese is **Tchau!**, ‘Bye!/Cheerio!’

Até logo in Brazilian Portuguese has the same meaning as an informal ‘goodbye’. Brazilians use this expression even when they know they are not going to meet later in the day.

The forms **até para a semana/mês/ano** are not used in Brazilian Portuguese. The preferred forms are **até a semana/o mês/o ano *que vem***.

Até sempre is not used in Brazilian Portuguese. **Até mais** is the preferred form.

B12.2.1.1 For other leave-taking formulas, see information in 12.2.1.1.

B12.2.2 *More formal farewells, figurative*

Despedir-se is not considered formal in Brazilian Portuguese and it is more frequently used than the expression **dizer adeus**.

B12.4 **Attracting attention**

Por favor is preferred in Brazil instead of **faça favor**.

Garçon! is the usual way to call ‘Waiter!’

Saying **pst** in Brazil, depending on the place and circumstances, can be considered very rude.

B12.4.3 *Call for help*

In Brazil the preferred expression is **Pega ladrão!** (Stop thief!).

B12.10 **Forms of address**

In Brazil, the most widely used form of address is **você** and **vocês**. Brazilians use **você** to the extent of mixing it with other forms of address in the same sentence:

D. Lina, tenho um presentinho para você.

or

D. Lina, tenho um presentinho para a senhora.

Mrs . . . I have a little present for you.

The impact of *você* is so great that a few years ago a Brazilian president gave a good dressing down to a journalist who first addressed him as **Senhor Presidente** and then allowed a *você* to slip through, instead of using **Vossa Excelência** as a pronoun, as was required.

Tu is seldom used, only in some regions by certain sectors of the population, and is often incorrectly combined with verbal forms in the third person, as people regard **tu** as more informal, but are not used to employing a verbal form in the second person singular (see B5.1.1). As stated above, this use should be avoided.

Vós is even more rarely used, and is almost exclusively a form of address reserved for God in one's prayers.

B12.10.2 *Less informal*

In Brazilian Portuguese it is not possible to use the name of the person being spoken to as a subject pronoun, as is frequently the case in European Portuguese. A Brazilian, on being addressed by his/her own name, will instinctively think that the speaker is referring to someone else who happens to have the same name. As *você* is widely accepted as a form of address for most people, except on formal occasions, it does not need to be avoided and a speaker of Brazilian Portuguese does not need to find other alternatives, as a European speaker would in the same circumstances.

Nevertheless, when wishing to address someone amidst a group of people, the way to single that person out is to use the name as a vocative and then continue with the sentence or question desired, using *você* as the subject:

– **Carlos, você já viu esse filme?**

Carlos, have you already seen that film?

– **Francisco e Daniela, como vocês estão de visita, não querem vir também?**

Francisco and Daniela, as you are here on a visit, wouldn't you like to come too?

- **Nós gostaríamos¹ muito de ver um filme português. Você é muito amável em nos convidar. Pode nos dar carona para o cinema?**

We would love to see a Portuguese film. It is very kind of you to invite us. Can you give us a lift to the cinema?

¹ Note the preference for the Conditional when expressing a wish or request in Brazilian Portuguese.

In a colloquial register, if *o senhor* is being used before a forename, it can assume the form of *seu*:

- **Seu Juca, que surpresa encontrar o senhor por aqui.**
Mr . . . what a surprise to meet you here.
- **É verdade seu Tristão.**
That's right, Mr . . .

B12.10.3 *Formal*

In Brazilian Portuguese *o senhor* and the variants *a senhora*, *os senhores*, *as senhoras* are the other most current forms of expressing a second person subject, in this case with more formal overtones. These can also be used as object pronouns.

Senhorita ‘Miss’ can be used as a title for single (unmarried) women, but usually in a formal register. It is rarely used in spoken Portuguese and can have pejorative connotations. Unlike European Portuguese, in Brazilian Portuguese *a menina* cannot be used as a title for a single (unmarried) woman. The same applies to *o menino*, *os meninos*, *as meninas* even if one wishes to address children. *Você*, *vocês* would be the preferred forms.

Married and middle-aged women without a higher-education degree or a professional title are usually addressed as *Dona* followed by their first name.

Other ways of saying ‘you’: *Vossa Senhoria*, (V.S.^a) is still used in Brazil, although almost exclusively in formal letter writing, to address high-ranking civil servants and members of the armed forces, whereas in Portugal it has become obsolete.

B12.10.4 *Titles*

In general terms, titles in Brazilian Portuguese tend to coincide with usage in other Portuguese variants.

B12.10.5 *Family*

Brazilians prefer the following affectionate terms of address:

papai, mamãe	daddy, mummy
vovô, vovó	grandad, granny
titio, titia	uncle, auntie

Note: In Brazilian Portuguese none of these forms can be used as subjects, *only as vocatives*. If a subject or object pronoun is required, the preferred forms are *ocê(s)* and *o senhor, a senhora*, etc.:

- **Titio, nós gostávamos muito que o senhor e Titia viessem jantar em nossa casa.**
Uncle, we would really like you and Auntie to come and have dinner at our house.
- **Pois não, Zeca, com muito gosto.**
Of course, Zeca, we would be delighted.

B12.11 *Talking about one's health*

B12.11.1 *In small talk and greetings*

Menos mal in Brazilian Portuguese is not used to talk about one's health. It means that a situation is not too bad, or fairly lucky:

- **Menos mal que a greve não incluiu os serviços médicos.**
Luckily the strike did not include health care.

B12.11.2.4 *Asking what you can/should do*

In Brazilian Portuguese the preferred expressions are:

- **Posso ... (levar uma vida normal, continuar minha vida normalmente, beber, comer de tudo, etc.)?**
Can I ... (carry on as normal, drink, eat anything, etc.)?

B12.12.4 *Place of residence and addresses*

The preferred form in Brazilian Portuguese is:

Qual é o seu endereço? What is your address?

B12.13 **Talking about the weather**

As continuous tenses are built with the main verb in the Present Participle in Brazilian Portuguese, weather expressions requiring this sort of tense differ somewhat from European Portuguese:

Está chovendo.	It is raining.
Está nevando.	It is snowing.
Está trovejando.	There is a thunderstorm.
Está relampejando.	It is lightning.
Está fazendo sol.	The sun is shining.
Está ventando.	The wind is blowing.
Está fazendo frio.	It is rather cold.

– **Está fazendo muito frio aqui em São Paulo.**

It is very cold here in São Paulo.

– **Eu não acho, você é que vem lá do Recife e não está habituado.**

I don't think so, but as you come from Recife, you are not used to it.

When speaking about a rise in temperature, the verb *esquentar* is more usual in Brazilian Portuguese, although *aquecer* is preferred in written language.

Exchanging factual information

B13.1 Identifying people

B13.1.4 *Profession, occupation*

As in Brazilian Portuguese there is a tendency not to invert the order of the subject and the verb in questions, it is preferable to ask:

O que o seu primo faz? What does your cousin do?

B13.3 Asking for information

As word order in Brazilian Portuguese can be far more flexible than in European Portuguese, especially in relation to object pronouns (see B5.1.2.1), some requests for information may present a slightly different word order:

Pode me dizer . . . (sentence with interrogative)?

Could you tell me . . . ?

Me diga . . . (sentence with interrogative), **por favor.**

Can you please tell me . . . ?

Sabe me dizer . . . (sentence with interrogative)?

Could you tell me . . . ?

B13.5 Letter writing

B13.5.1 Dates

In Brazilian Portuguese months are written in lower case:

Salvador, 30 de novembro de 1998

Salvador, 30 November 1998

B13.5.2 Opening formulas

B13.5.2.1 Formal: $\text{II}^{\text{mo(a)}}$ Senhor(a) may be preferred in Brazilian Portuguese.

Getting things done

B14.4 Inviting others to do something

In Brazilian Portuguese, *conosco* is usually replaced by *com a gente*, for example:

- **David, você também quer vir com a gente?**
David, do you want to come with us too?

B14.8 Requesting assistance

As word order in Brazilian Portuguese can be far more flexible than in European Portuguese, especially in relation to object pronouns (see B5.1.2.1), some requests for assistance may present slightly different word order:

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| Me ajude a + (phrase with Infinitive) | Help me to . . . |
| Pode me ajudar a + (phrase with Infinitive)? | Would you help me to . . . ? |
| Me dê uma ajuda. | Give me a hand. |
- **Me ajude a lavar o carro, por favor.**
Help me wash the car, please.
 - **Está bem, mas depois você também me dá uma ajudinha com o jardim.**
All right, but afterwards you give me a hand in the garden too.

B14.12 Enquiring about and expressing intention, want or desire

In Brazilian Portuguese, use **pretender**, although **tencionar** is acceptable in literature. One can also use **ter intenção de**.

- **O que você pretende fazer quando terminar o curso?**
What do you intend to do when you have finished your degree?

Enquiring
about and
expressing
intention,
want or
desire

Finding out about and expressing intellectual attitudes

B15.6 Incomprehension and clarification

As continuous tenses in Brazilian Portuguese are built with the main verb in the Present Participle, sentences explaining your present lack of clarification or state of confusion also require a Present Participle:

Não estou vendo nada. I do not understand/see at all.

Não estou entendendo nada. I do not understand a thing.

Não estou sabendo de nada. I do not know anything.

– **Aquilo foi tudo uma grande confusão, mas no fim tudo deu certo. Você está vendo?**

That was all a huge mess but in the end it all worked out all right. Do you see?

– **Não, eu não estou vendo nada. Você pode explicar melhor?**

No, I don't see it at all. Can you explain it better?

B15.7 Certainty and uncertainty

Não tenho certeza (without the article) is the preferred form in Brazilian Portuguese.

Judgement and evaluation

B16.2 Expressing displeasure or dislike

In Brazilian Portuguese **embirrar** has a different connotation. It means that a person is refusing to speak just to make a point. For example:

Nem adianta falar com ela! Está embirrada desde cedo!

It is no good speaking to her! She has been sulking all along!

B16.5 Expressing surprise

Minha!/Nossa! Oh, my!

Minha Nossa Senhora! Golly! Gosh!

¹ These exclamations seem to be a short form of **Minha vida!** or **Minha Nossa Senhora!**

B16.6 Expressing hope

In Brazilian Portuguese, **quem dera** is not used by itself as an exclamation, but as an expression to introduce a deep wish. The same use can be found in European Portuguese.

Quem dera eu tivesse dinheiro! Tirava toda a família da miséria!

I wish I had money! I would get the whole family out of poverty!

B16

Judgement
and
evaluation

B16.14 Apologizing

Fila is the correct word for ‘queue’ in Brazil.

B16.17 Expressing regret

In Brazilian Portuguese the preposition **a** is omitted and one only exclaims **sério?** instead of **a sério?** in order to express incredulity.

PART IV

*Historical and cultural
notes*

The Portuguese language and the cultures of the Portuguese-speaking world

18.1 Portuguese: an international language

Portuguese is at present the seventh most spoken language in the world. It is the official language of some 200m people in eight countries spanning four continents: Portugal, where it originates, in Europe; Brazil, the largest country and economy in South America; Angola, Mozambique, Guinea-Bissau, Cape Verde, and São Tomé e Príncipe in Africa; and East Timor in Australasia.

Portuguese is also spoken in the North Atlantic archipelagos of Madeira and the Azores. These are autonomous regions of Portugal and not colonies, because they were uninhabited islands settled in the fifteenth century by people of European stock, mostly Portuguese. A small community of descendants of the Portuguese in the city of Malacca in Western Malaysia still speak Portuguese. The same is the case of the city of Goa in western India, and in Macau, a Portuguese territory in South East China until the year 2000.

Portuguese is also used by small communities of emigrants scattered around the world in countries such as the USA, Venezuela, France, the UK, Switzerland, Luxembourg and South Africa.

18.1.1 Portuguese as an official language

The importance of Portuguese in the world today is reflected in the number of major international organizations which have adopted it as an official language:

- The European Union (EU), an organization of 15 European Countries linked by common economic, trade and development policies.

- The Africa Caribbean Pacific Secretariat (ACP), an assembly within the EU representing 77 countries, all former colonies of members of the European Union.
- The African Union (AU), an independent organization modelled on the European Union and which aims for the peaceful cooperation and development of African countries.
- The Southern African Development Community (SADC), a group of 14 African countries cooperating for the development of the region.
- The Organization of American States (OAS), the world's oldest regional organization dating back to 1889–90.
- The Southern Common Market (MERCOSUL), an organization whose objectives are the cooperation and development of South American countries for the establishment of a common market through trade liberalization.
- Partners of the Americas, a people-to-people organization promoting development, education, health, job training and the protection of the environment and of human rights through partnership programmes between nations in the Americas.

As an international language, Portuguese has an interesting advantage: as a rule, speakers of Portuguese can easily understand Spanish. Spanish speakers, however, show greater difficulty in understanding Portuguese.

18.1.2 *Variants of Portuguese*

There are two main variants of Portuguese – European Portuguese, as spoken and pronounced in Portugal, and Brazilian Portuguese, which presents some divergences, as explained in Chapter 17. These divergences arise from the influence of native Indian languages in Brazil, the African dialects of the slaves brought to work in the sugar plantations in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, as well as from the influence of the languages of other Europeans who emigrated to Brazil, mainly during the nineteenth century. Like the English spoken in the USA, Brazilian Portuguese also shows a degree of grammatical simplification as well as the preservation of some archaisms.

The Portuguese spoken in Angola, Mozambique, Cape Verde, São Tomé e Príncipe and Guinea-Bissau, a group of countries often referred to as the PALOPs (*Países Africanos de Língua Oficial Portuguesa*), is closer to European Portuguese. This is because a strong Portuguese presence was felt

until 1975, the date when all these countries became independent. Inevitably, there is an African variety of Portuguese in development, which shows the influence of African dialects, as well as a process of grammatical simplification, as noted above in Brazilian Portuguese. The people of Cape Verde and Guinea-Bissau also speak types of creole deriving from old Portuguese combined with African dialects. Cape Verdean creole can be readily enjoyed in the songs of Cesária Évora, who has become a singer of international acclaim.

18.2 The origins of Portuguese

The history of the Portuguese language is intimately connected with the history of Portugal and its antecedents. Portuguese derives mainly from Latin. Not classical Latin, but the Latin spoken by the Roman soldiers who subdued the peoples of the Iberian Peninsula, combined with the local dialects. Some of the peoples who established themselves in the Peninsula as the Roman Empire crumbled away were of German origin (Suevi, Goths and Visigoths) and so Portuguese has a number of words of Germanic origin (like *guerra* and *feltro*, for instance). Berber peoples from North Africa invaded the Iberian Peninsula in 711 and also left their strong imprint on the language. Most place names beginning with the letters ‘al’ are of Arabic origin. The same applies to agricultural products and technology brought by the Arabs to the Peninsula, of which *alface* (lettuce) and *nora* (a large wheel with buckets attached, powered by a donkey or mule) are examples.

During the Middle Ages, the amalgam of the colloquial Latin spoken by Roman soldiers and traders and the local dialects evolved into various Romance languages, one of them being Galician-Portuguese. This is the conventional name given by linguists to the language spoken in the western fringe of the Iberian Peninsula until the second quarter of the fourteenth century. That region corresponds to what is nowadays modern Portugal, and the autonomous region of Galicia in north-west Spain. The political independence of Portugal, proclaimed by Afonso Henriques in 1143, initiated a simultaneous cultural separation from the other regions in western Iberia. Two hundred years later, the linguistic differences found in Galicia and Portugal are significant enough for specialists to consider the date of 1325 as the end of Galician-Portuguese as such, and to mark its development into two separate languages. This conventional landmark is the date of the death of King Dinis of Portugal, one of the major lyrical poets of

the period. Curiously enough, until then, most lyrical poetry in the Iberian Peninsula was written in Galician-Portuguese, whereas epic works tended to be written in Castilian. Even in the later Middle Ages and the Renaissance period it was not unusual for Portuguese poets to write in Castilian.

The age of exploration and of the great navigations, which began in the late fourteenth century, brought Portuguese to the four corners of the world. Portuguese both influenced and was influenced by languages from remote parts of the planet. Malay, for instance, still has in its current vocabulary many words of Portuguese origin. Some Portuguese influence can also be found in Japanese, as the Portuguese were the first Europeans to travel to Japan. Equally, there are many words from South American dialects, which have left their mark, especially from Tupi, a sort of *lingua franca* spoken by Brazilian Indians and used by Portuguese settlers in the first stages of the colonization of Brazil. Many words of African origin can equally be found in Portuguese, as a result of the need to refer to objects, flora and fauna unknown to the European Portuguese speaker.

In the sixteenth century, Camões became to the Portuguese language what Shakespeare is to English, although the former is better known for his poetry and the latter for his plays. After Camões, Portuguese became a modern and sensitive linguistic instrument of communication, with a rich vocabulary reflecting its Classical Roman and Greek origins, and structured by a complex syntax. It was capable of transmitting a gamut of concepts and experiences from the precise description of new elements, to philosophical abstractions, or the artistic expression of the most subtle human feelings and longings.

Portuguese is nowadays a modern language for international and scientific communication. All branches of the sciences are taught in Portuguese in the universities of Lusophone countries. Inevitably, English has a great influence, especially in the areas of advanced technology, as new concepts and their respective terminology are currently being developed for the most part in Anglophone countries. The tendency to readily adopt words of foreign origin, mainly Anglicisms and Galicisms, is more prevalent in Brazil than in Portugal. Whereas a Brazilian scientist or media person will easily add a Portuguese ending to a foreign word, his/her Portuguese counterpart is more likely to strive to find a solution within the boundaries and capabilities of the Portuguese language.

18.3 Portuguese: cultural expressions

Portuguese is a rich cultural language, used in the expression of various literatures spanning over eight centuries and eight countries scattered around the globe and, therefore, it presents contrasts and diversity.

18.3.1 Literature

The first literary works written in Portuguese are medieval poems recorded in songbooks known as *cancioneiros*. These date from the early fourteenth century, although the poems may have originated at an earlier date. The development of Portuguese literature in general follows similar periods, trends and movements as those found in the rest of Europe, albeit with some variations and at later dates. The work of Luís de Camões is a landmark in the Portuguese Renaissance period with his epic poem *Os Lusíadas*, which, in a style influenced by classical poets such as Homer and Virgil, tells the story of Vasco da Gama's discovery of the sea route to India. In the nineteenth century, Romanticism is represented by Almeida Garrett, Camilo Castelo Branco, Júlio Diniz and the poetry of Augusto Castilho, whereas Eça de Queiroz is an exponent of Realism, especially with his masterpiece, the novel *Os Maias*. In the twentieth century Fernando Pessoa is one of the most outstanding European poets and literary critics; he used different heteronyms under which he wrote in a wide variety of genres and styles. At present Portuguese literature is going through a remarkable period of creativity and innovation with writers such as José Saramago (the 1998 Nobel Prize winner), Lídia Jorge, Agustina Bessa-Luís, Hélia Correia and many others.

Brazilian literature began by following Portuguese and European models but in 1865, with José de Alencar's epic *Guarani* and the novel *Iracema*, which present a romantic image of the Brazilian Indian, there is an attempt to give it a true South American stamp. Machado de Assis marks the apogee of the Brazilian realist novel with psychologically rich characters. The search for a truly Brazilian literature, free of European boundaries while simultaneously encompassing any influences and trends that Brazilian writers deemed worthwhile, is represented by the work of Oswald de Andrade and the modernist movement of the 1920s, self-proclaimed in the *Manifesto Antropófago*. In the second half of the twentieth century, Jorge Amado and his novels portraying the North Eastern communities of Brazil in strong local colours became icons of Brazilian literature. Other

outstanding writers focusing on the idiosyncrasies and existential problems of 'nordestino' Brazilian society are Raquel de Queirós, Graciliano Ramos and José Lins do Rego, who leads the reader into the complexities of life within the confines of the sugar-cane plantation. Lygia Fagundes Telles delves into the paths of memory and the fetters of family life in São Paulo, whereas Clarice Lispector, with her surrealist tales and narratives, shows an incisive psychological analysis of her characters.

The Portuguese-speaking African countries are also producing a rich *corpus* of literary production. Inevitably, much of the literature produced in Portuguese-speaking Africa is either *engagée*, or contains close references to the socio-political reality prevalent in each country either during their armed struggle or the aftermath of independence and its long-lasting consequences. Some representative examples are the works of the Angolans Castro Soromenho, who gives a Classical treatment to African themes, Pepetela, whose novels reflect his perplexed approach to the question of collective identity and nation, or Manuel Rui's caricatures of social mobility. José Craveirinha is the poet laureate of Mozambique, a nation of poets, while Mia Couto's short stories deal with the dreams and aspirations of the simple people of Mozambique who survive the post-independence civil war. Lina Magaia, on the other hand, bluntly and accusingly speaks of the horrors of the civil war, expressing a collective longing for reconstruction and the rediscovery of innocence and the simple pleasures of just living in peace.

The University of Exeter has an excellent web page on the Internet with a bibliography on Lusophone African writers, with particular emphasis on women writers.

18.3.2 Music

This is another varied world that will be opened to the new learner of Portuguese. Actually, one of the best ways to learn and practise a language is to listen to its music and songs and sing along. This practice improves comprehension, pronunciation and intonation

Portuguese music is usually associated with *fado*. This is a strongly melodic form of music, typical of the urban communities of Lisbon and Coimbra, frequently sung by people known as *fadistas*, and accompanied by one or more guitars. The Portuguese guitar is a 12-stringed instrument deriving from the medieval lute and with affinities with the mandolin, though larger

in size. It has the same round shape and delicate sound. *Fadistas* are usually accompanied by a *guitarra* (Portuguese guitar) and a *viola* (the usual classical guitar of other cultures). It is often said that *fado* is the Portuguese equivalent of the blues, as its main themes are extreme states of passion – love, jealousy, spite, revenge – or inexorable powers that control humankind – fate and destiny. These *fados* are rather slow and plangent in tone. The most loved singer of this form of traditional *fado* is Amália Rodrigues, who died in 1998, but left a great legacy and a large collection of recordings (*O Melhor de Amália*, Valentim de Carvalho, 1995). Singers like Cristina Branco, Mísia and Dulce Pontes have been referred to as Amália's artistic heirs. Mísia and Dulce Pontes, however, have gone further. Although endowed with exquisite and powerful voices, extremely well suited to *fado*, they have introduced some innovation, either in the musical arrangement, accompaniment, or even in the creative lyrics that reflect contemporary lyrical trends. These innovations, instead of undermining the concept of *fado*, strengthen it because they give it a contemporary dimension, typical of any real form of popular cultural expression, which cannot be static. Other traditional *fadistas* are Alfredo Marceneiro, Carlos Ramos, Fernando Farinha, Fernanda Maria, Cidália Meireles, Maria Teresa Noronha, and many others. *Fado* can occasionally be lively and humorous, and no one explored that vein better than Hermínia Silva. A good selection of *fados* showing different styles by different singers can be found on the CD *The Story of Fado* (Hemisphere, 1997).

The *fado* traditionally sung by the students of the University of Coimbra is more of a ballad, frequently played and sung in serenades or on the steps of the old cathedral, the 'Sé Velha', marking special occasions in the academic cultural calendar such as the 'Queima das Fitas' in May. The Menano brothers were well known *fado* singers. José Afonso also began his career singing Coimbra *fado*, while still attending secondary school. His critical position against the dictatorial Salazar regime turned him into a protest singer who inspired the imagination of his generation. His most famous composition is *Grândola Vila Morena*, which was used as the code sign for the onset of the democratic revolution of 25 April 1974. His nephew, João Afonso, has become an excellent ballad writer. Although claiming independence from his uncle's musical influence, João Afonso's style has a similar sound, evoking the Coimbra ballad, and his lyrics have also references to simple, popular characters. One of the greatest virtuoso Portuguese guitar players ever is Carlos Paredes. He also progressed from a typical Coimbra style of guitar playing to a melodic flow that has often been equated to the essence of the Portuguese soul (*O Melhor de Carlos Paredes*,

Valentim de Carvalho, 1998). António Chainho has achieved a similar status although starting from his Lisbon *fado* roots.

The Portuguese folk musical tradition is extremely rich and varies widely from region to region. Much of it is either to be danced, or to mark the rhythm of specific tasks typical of agricultural work. The lyrics are simple and frequently humorous. A good cross-section can be found on the CD *Musical Traditions of Portugal* (Smithsonian/Folkways Recordings, 1994).

Whereas in the 1960s young people in urban Portugal tended to listen to Anglo-Saxon rock music, in recent years, young people have expressed the wish to listen to rock sung in Portuguese, and many new bands have appeared. Curiously enough, many of the lyrics still reflect recurring themes in the Portuguese cultural tradition: the sea, ships, seagulls, ports, havens, distance, parting, and the longing to return. It is also easy to find historical references either in the lyrics or the band's own name: *El-Rei Dom Sebastião* (King Sebastian, who disappeared in a disastrous battle in North Africa), *Ala dos Namorados* (band with the same name as a legendary group of combatants in the fourteenth century), *Sétima Legião*, (Seventh Legion), *Trovante* (a play on the word 'troubadour'), etc.

Other popular rock bands are *GNR*, *Radio Macau*, *Xutos & Pontapés*, *Clã*, *Resistência*, *Entre Aspas*, *Palma's Gang* and others. A miscellany can be found on the double CD *Portugal ao Vivo* (Valentim de Carvalho, 2002). It is worth listening to Rui Veloso and João Gil as solo singers or band-leaders for the quality of their music and the originality of the lyrics. Adelaide Ferreira was a rock singer, but recently recorded a collection of ballads. A musical phenomenon of the past 10 years has been *Madredeus*. The group has developed a unique sound, which combines the plangent music and lyrics expected of a female *fado* singer with slow, often electronic instrumental arrangements. *Madredeus* has over the years won international acclaim.

During the first three centuries of the Portuguese colonization of Brazil, music was very closely related to religion: from the native Indian ritual dances and the rhythms of the African slaves to the hymns of the priests who had journeyed from Portugal with the aim of establishing the Catholic Church. The only other source of music came from the fanfares of the Portuguese army.

Music in Brazil went on to develop along two lines, either adapting the European tradition or combining the sounds of European, indigenous and African music. With the abolition of slavery in 1888 and the proclamation of the Republic in 1889, and the growth of cities like Rio de Janeiro,

Salvador and Recife – all with significant black populations – the first two forms of recognizably Brazilian music emerged: *lundu* (primarily the music of the black population) and *modinha* (founded in the white, European tradition).

With the end of slavery, and as the black communities of Brazil became more visible in society, so their participation in music-making and performance increased, particularly in Carnival and *samba*. Around this time what were later to become the samba schools began to appear in Rio.

The twentieth century saw music from the USA flood into the country but the production of indigenous music continued, notably with the development of the *samba-canção*, a popular style, which emerged around the end of the Second World War and often dwelt on loneliness as its theme, bringing a more reflective sound than its predecessor.

Nevertheless, there were those who thought any form of samba out of date and, in seeking a new sound, they created the *bossa nova* (musicians like João Gilberto and Antônio Carlos Jobim). Although it was initially poorly received, this slow, smooth rhythm soon gained in popularity and reached out beyond Brazil's borders to the rest of the world. In the 1960s the *bossa nova* incorporated elements of the traditional samba.

At the end of the 1960s *Tropicalismo* was born. With the prominent participation of the Bahia-born Caetano Veloso, alongside Gilberto Gil, Tom Zé and others, *Tropicalismo* changed Brazilian music not through a new sound *per se* but by challenging artistic and cultural attitudes. Although primarily music-based, it became a cultural, and at times controversial, phenomenon which went on to influence later generations. Since then Brazilian music has gone on to embrace rock and pop but it is for the samba and bossa nova that it is still most known worldwide.

Café Brazil (Teldec Classics International, 2001) is a CD where the 'grandmasters are joined by a new generation of Brazilian singers and instrumentalists in a rediscovery of Choro, the precursor of Samba'. A good selection of *chorinho* is played by the Grupo Som de Ouro in *Chorinho* (Novo Esquema, 1980). The creator of *bossa nova* can be heard in *Antônio Carlos Jobim the composer of 'Desafinado', plays* (Verve, The Desert Island Library, 2000). His music can also be heard in a famous jazz arrangement by Stan Getz and João Gilberto in *Getz/Gilberto featuring Antônio Carlos Jobim* (Verve, The Desert Island Library, 2000).

The music of the Portuguese-speaking African countries shares common features as a result of the legacy of many years as part of a group of nations

under Portuguese rule, sharing the same culture and a relatively similar combination of European Portuguese and African influences interspersed with Brazilian. Brazilian music has always been very popular amongst Portuguese-speaking audiences inside or outside Portugal and its erstwhile colonial empire. Lusophone Africans enjoy listening to the music of any of the other Portuguese-speaking countries, although the lyrics are often sung in a form of creole (Cape Verde or Guinea-Bissau), or in an African dialect not necessarily comprehensible to the audience.

Cape Verdean music has very distinctive rhythms like the *coladeira*, or the slow *morna*. These have recently acquired a wider audience thanks to the performances of the internationally acclaimed Cesária Évora. The music of Guinea-Bissau may present elements with an Arabic sound quality evoking modern artists of West Africa like Salif Keita. Angolan and Mozambican music, on the other hand, seems to share more with rhythms and styles popular in Zaire and South Africa. A good cross-section of music from Lusophone Africa can be found on the CD *An Afro-Portuguese Odyssey* (Putumayo World Music, 2002, ISBN 1587590611). An extremely interesting miscellany of songs, styles, musicians and performances with multinational blends inspired by the music of the Portuguese diaspora can be found on the CD *Onda Sonora: Red Hot + Lisbon* (Red Hot, 1998).

18.3.3 Cinema

Although the Portuguese film industry is relatively small, it regularly participates in international festivals with some success.

In the first half of the twentieth century, directors such as Chianca de Gracia (*Aldeia da Roupa Branca*, 1938), José Cottinelli Telmo (*A Canção de Lisboa*, 1933), António Lopes Ribeiro (*O Pai Tirano*, 1941), Francisco Ribeiro (*O Pátio das Cantigas*, 1942) and Arthur Duarte (*O Costa do Castelo*, 1943; *A Menina da Rádio*, 1944; *O Leão da Estrela*, 1947; *O Grande Elias*, 1950) produced a series of comedies of manners which present a humorous and simultaneously idyllic view of Portuguese society. These films are extremely entertaining, and valuable as documents of ways of life that have already disappeared. At present they are enjoying a revival and remastered copies are being made available to the wider public in video form. Of the recent comedies, perhaps the most successful was *Crónica dos Bons Malandros* (Fernando Lopes, 1984), portraying characters living on the fringes of modern society, though possessing well-meaning and entertaining personalities.

Manoel de Oliveira is probably one of the most successful Portuguese directors, having received multiple international awards during his long career. Eduardo Geda and António da Cunha Telles are also directors and producers of wide acclaim.

Adaptations of modern literary works of interest are the films *Retalhos da Vida de um Médico* (Jorge Brum do Canto, 1962), based on a novel by Fernando Namora, *Uma Abelha na Chuva* (Fernando Lopes, 1972), from a novel by Carlos Oliveira, or *Francisca* (Manoel de Oliveira, 1981) from a novel by Agustina Bessa-Luís.

A recent Portuguese release is *Esquece tudo o que te disse* (António Ferreira, 2002), a film that deals with the disintegration of a Portuguese family, whose members are divided between their modern disconnected existence and their rural heritage.

Brazil has a strong and prolific film industry. The first feature film in Brazil was the comedy *Nhô Anastácio Chegou de Viagem*, by Júlio Ferrez Antonio Campos, in 1908. Brazilian cinema also produced adaptations of famous literary works such as the epic *O Guarani* by José de Alencar in an adaptation by Antônio Leal.

The *cinema novo* of the 1960s focused on acute national problems, which ranged from conflicts in rural areas to human problems in the large cities. It also produced film versions of important Brazilian novels such as *Vidas Secas*, based on a novel by the northeastern writer Graciliano Ramos. More recently, adaptations of Jorge Amado's novels can also be found in *Gabriela Cravo e Canela* and *Dona Flôr e seus Dois Maridos*. One of the best films of the 1980s is the adaptation of Clarice Lispector's novel *A Hora da Estrela* (Susana Amaral, 1985).

Black Orpheus (Marcel Camus, 1959), which won a Palme d'Or in Cannes and an Oscar as best foreign film, together with the more recent remake *Orfeu Negro* (Carlos Diegues, 2000), are cinema adaptations of a play by the poet Vinicius de Moraes. The theme is the myth of Orpheus and Eurydice against the back-cloth of Carnival in the *favelas* of Rio. The 1959 version launched Antônio Carlos Jobim's *bossa nova* beat onto the international scene.

The *favelas*, ever growing shanty-towns inside and outside Brazil's urban areas, and the gangs of abandoned children roaming the streets, have become a focus of attention for directors who are not scared to address serious social problems. *Pixote, a Lei do mais Fraco* (Hector Babenco, 1980), based on the novel *Infância dos Mortos* by José Louzeiro, is the

story of a young boy leading a group of other abandoned children in the violent back streets of Rio. *Cidade de Deus* (Fernando Meirelles, 2002), an adaptation of Paulo Lins' novel with the same title, took the international critics by storm. Through the eyes of yet another child, is told the story of one of the most dangerous *favelas* in Rio, its organized crime and drug trade. The international success of this film is attributed to the blunt presentation on screen of the deepening chasm that separates the haves and the have-nots anywhere on the globe.

In the 1990s, when Brazilian cinema seemed to have entered a phase of decline after losing its state protection, there was a wave of creativity and renewal with films such as *O Quatrilho* (Fábio Barreto, 1994), *Carlota Joaquina* (Carla Camurati, 1995), and more recently, *Terra Estrangeira* (Walter Salles, 1996). The latter deals with the problems of two Brazilians caught up in a criminal network in Portugal, feeling foreigners in a country that speaks their native language. *Central do Brasil*, also directed by Walter Salles (1998), has been a major success. Fernanda Montenegro won the Silver Prize in Berlin for best actress. The film has stunning photography as Dora (Fernanda Montenegro) and a young orphan travel across north-eastern Brazil to find his father. *Eu Tu Eles* (Andrucha Waddington, 2000) is also set in this story-rich region, telling the tale of a woman with three husbands.

For complete relaxation, try *Bossa Nova* (Bruno Barreto, 1999). It is a sophisticated and entertaining romantic comedy charmingly constructed over a sound track with music by Antônio Carlos Jobim.

The African Lusophone countries have a nascent film industry. Nevertheless the director Flora Gomes from Guinea-Bissau has produced an extremely interesting film, *Mortu Nega* (1988) focusing on the troubles of a Guinean couple during the armed struggle for independence and the fact that the end of the war does not bring them the quiet life and comfort that they had longed for in their later years. Although combat is not shown in the film, the audience can sense the atmosphere of war through the eyes and anxieties of Diminga, the main female character. This is a situation leading to problems and emotions also felt in countries such as Angola and Mozambique. The film, however, is spoken in Guinean creole.

The cultural notes in this chapter are intended only as a brief introduction to the cultures of the countries where Portuguese is spoken. The objective of the authors was to encourage the reader to discover a new and rich world, and to share with the native speakers of Portuguese anywhere in the world the same pleasures and dreams, which can only be expressed in artistic form.

We have not made references to Timor-Leste, or East Timor, because it is an extremely young country still establishing its cultural institutions after 25 years of Indonesian occupation. East Timor was a Portuguese colony, on the Eastern side of an Australasian island, until 1975. When Portugal withdrew its presence from the territory in the wake of the democratic revolution of April 1974, which brought to an end four decades of dictatorship in Portugal, and East Timor declared itself an independent state, it was invaded by Indonesia. There ensued a reign of terror with sporadic acts of genocide until in 1999, through a referendum, the territory was able to give voice to its wish for self-determination. On 20 May 2002, East Timor finally became the eighth Portuguese-speaking country in the world. When in 1999 Xanana Gusmão, now President of East Timor, was released from prison by the Indonesian authorities, he made a moving speech in Portuguese, as an affirmation of the cultural divide between East Timorese and Indonesians, and an affiliation to the Portuguese-speaking communities of the world. Xanana Gusmão is an acclaimed poet in his own right.

18.4 Internet resources

The Internet has become a precious source of information on any subject, anywhere in the world. Such information is published in most languages including Portuguese. Unfortunately, many websites are liable to change address or even disappear at short notice. For that reason, we have only indicated some of the most reliable to serve as a starting point for readers.

Many search engines can find most subjects on the Internet:

- www.google.com is excellent for most subjects;
- www.sapo.pt is a Portugal specific search engine;
- www.yahoo.com.br, www.terra.com.br and www.uol.com.br are dedicated to Brazil.

On cultural matters it is worthwhile visiting:

- www.instituto-camoes.pt – website of Instituto Camões;
- www.bn.pt – website of the Biblioteca Nacional in Lisbon;
- www.brazil.org.uk – website of the Brazilian Embassy in London;
- www.brasilemb.org – website of the Brazilian Embassy in Washington DC.

Many newspapers and magazines in Portuguese are also available on the Internet:

- www.publico.pt – Portuguese newspaper *O Público*;
- www.rtp.pt – Online news provided by RTP, the main Portuguese TV station;
- www.folha.uol.com.br/folha/ – Brazilian newspaper *Folha on Line*;
- www1.folha.uol.com.br/fsp/ – Brazilian newspaper *Folha de São Paulo*;
- www.cnnportugues.com/ – Online edition of CNN news in Brazilian Portuguese.

The space below is for the reader to record the web addresses that prove to be the most relevant to his/her interests.

Bibliography

- Alves, Manuel dos Santos, *Prontuário da língua portuguesa*, Lisbon: Livraria Popular de Francisco Franco, 1991.
- Camara, J.R. and Mattoso, J., *The Portuguese Language* (English version by Anthony J. Naro), Chicago: Chicago University Press, 1972.
- *História e estrutura da língua portuguesa*, Rio de Janeiro: Padrão – Livraria Editora, 1979.
- Casteleiro, João Malaca, Meira, Américo and Pascoal, José, *Nível limiar: para o ensino [e] aprendizagem de português como língua segunda [e] língua estrangeira*, Strasbourg: Conseil d'Europe, Lisbon: Instituto de Cultura e Língua Portuguesa, 1988.
- Cegalla, Domingos Paschoal, *Novíssima Gramática da Língua Portuguesa (com numerosos exercícios)*, São Paulo: Editorial Nacional, 1997.
- Cintra, Luís F. Lindley, *Sobre 'Formas de tratamento' na língua portuguesa*, Lisbon: Livros Horizonte, 1986.
- Corôa, Maria Luiza Monteiro Sales, *O tempo nos verbos do português: uma introdução à sua interpretação semântica*, Brasília: Thesaurus, 1985.
- Cunha, Celso, *Gramática do português contemporâneo*, Belo Horizonte: Editora Bernardo Alvares, 1971.
- Cunha, Celso and Cintra, Luís F. Lindley, *Nova gramática do português contemporâneo*, Lisbon: Edições João Sá da Costa, 1995.
- Dias, Eduardo Mayone, Lathrop, Thomas A. and Rosa, Joseph G., *Portugal: língua e cultura*, Los Angeles: Cabrilho Press, 1977.
- Eberhard, Gärtner, *Estudos de Gramática Portuguesa*, Biblioteca luso-brasileira, vol. 12, Frankfurt: TFM, 2000.
- Ellison, Fred P. and Matos, Francisco Gomes de, *Modern Portuguese*, New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1971.
- Greenbaum, Sidney, *An Introduction to English Grammar*, London: Longman, 1991.
- Leite, Isabel Coimbra and Coimbra, Olga Mata, *Português sem fronteiras*, Lisbon: Edições Técnicas, 1989.

- Mateus, Maria Helena Mira, *Gramática da Língua Portuguesa*, Lisboa: Caminho, 1989 and 1994.
- Michael, Ian, *English Grammatical Categories*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1970.
- Nogueira, Rodrigo de Sá, *Dicionário de verbos portugueses conjugados*, Lisbon: Livraria Clássica Editora, 1986.
- Quirk, Randolph, Greenbaum, Sidney, Leech, Geoffrey and Svartvik, Jan, *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*, New York: Longman, 1985.
- Relvas, José Maria, *Gramática Portuguesa*, Lisboa, Maputo: Livraria Leia Comercial, 1990.
- Rodrigues, Fernando José and Humphreys, Peter, *Falar é aprender: português para estrangeiros*, Oporto: Porto Editora, 1993.
- Willis, R.C., *An Essential Course in Modern Portuguese*, London: Harrap, 1971.

Index

This index includes: (a) grammatical terms which are used in the grammar or commonly used in reference grammars or descriptions of Portuguese; (b) English grammatical words such as ‘whatever’; (c) words referring to language functions.

Note: Section number preceded by a capital ‘B’ indicates that there is a corresponding item in Part III: Brazilian variants.

- a ‘at, on, to’, preposition 3.4.1.3, 4.3.1, 10.1, B11.4
 - contraction 5.3.2
 - with pronouns 5.4.2(b)
- a(s) ‘the; her, it, them’
 - as definite article 3.1, 3.2
 - as pronoun 5.1.2
- a **fim de que** ‘in order to’, conjunction 9.2.4
- accents 1.5, 8.2(a)
- accusing 16.19
- acolá** ‘over there’, adverb 8.1
- action *see* instructing, inviting a course of action, offering to do something, requesting, suggesting a course of action
- address
 - forms of 5.1.1, B12.10
 - family B12.10.5
 - residence 12.12.4
 - titles B12.10.4
- adjectives B4
 - agreement 4.4
 - comparative 4.3.1
 - degree B4.3
 - demonstrative 5.3.4
 - gender 4.1
 - indefinite 5.6
 - number 4.2
 - position 4.5, 8.4, 11.12.2, 11.12.3, 11.12.4, 11.12.5
 - possessive B3.2.5, B5.2, B5.2.1
 - special forms B4.3.3
 - suffixes 4.3.2.2.1
 - superlative 4.3.2
- adverbs 4.3.1, 8
 - comparative 8.5.1
 - degree 4.3.2.2.2, 8.5
 - in **-mente** 8.2
 - as interrogatives 5.5.6, 8.1(i)
 - position 5.1.2.2(d), 5.1.3.2, 8.4, 11.12.1(c), 11.12.5
 - special forms 8.5.1
 - superlative 8.5.2
- advice *see* asking for affirmative 11.8
- agglutination 2.5.1.2
- agreement
 - of adjectives 4.4
 - in passive voice 7.9
 - of pronouns 5.4.4, 5.4.5, 5.6 note 1 *see* also enquiring about, expressing
- aí** ‘there’, adverb 8.1
- ainda** ‘even, still’
 - as adverb 4.3.1, 5.1.2.2(d), 11.9
 - as conjunction 9.2.2
- ainda que** ‘even if/though’ 9.2.2
- além** ‘yonder’, adverb 8.1
- algo** ‘something’, pronoun 5.6
- alguém** ‘someone’, pronoun 5.6
- alí** ‘over there’, adverb 8.1(b) note
- ante** ‘before’, preposition 10.1
- antes** ‘before’, adverb 8.1(a)
- antes que** ‘before’, conjunction 9.2.5

- ao** 'when, on' 7.5.3
aonde 'where to', pronoun 5.4.3
apenas 'just; as soon as'
 as adverb 8.1(h)
 as conjunction 9.2.5
apesar de 'in spite of', conjunction 9.2.2
apologizing B16.14
após 'after', preposition 10.1
appreciation *see* expressing
approval *see* enquiring about, expressing
aquele(s), aquela(s) 'that, those'
 demonstrative 5.3
aqui 'here' adverb 8.1(b), 12.4.1
aquilo 'that' demonstrative 5.3.1
àquilo 'to that' 5.3.3
arts 2.1.2.1
articles B3
 contraction 3.4, 3.8
 definite 3.1, 3.2, 3.3
 indefinite 3.5, 3.6
 omission 3.3, 3.7
 use of B3.2, 3.6
asking for
 advice 14.5
 assistance B14.8
 clarification B15.6
 information B13.3
 the time 13.3.1
assim 'thus'
 as adverb 8.1(c)
 as conjunction 9.1.4
assim como 'as well as', conjunction 9.2.6
assim que 'as soon as', conjunction
 7.3.5.1, 7.3.6.1, 9.2.5
assistance *see* requesting
assumptions (correcting) 13.6
até 'until' 10.1
attention (attracting) B12.4
attitudes (intellectual) *see* enquiring
 about, expressing
augmentatives B2.4
auxiliary verbs *see* verbs

bastante 'enough, quite a lot'
 as modifier 4.5.1.2, 5.1.2.2(d)
 indefinite pronoun 5.6
bem 'well, quite', adverb 4.3.1, 8.1(c),
 8.5.1, 12.4.1
bem como 'as well as', conjunction 9.2.6

 cá 'here', adverb 8.1
cada 'each', indefinite pronoun or
 adjective 5.6
capability *see* enquiring about, expressing
capes, names of 2.1.1.1
cars, names of 2.1.1.1
caso 'if' 9.2.3
certainty *see* stating
ao certo 'exactly', adverb 8.3

certo(s), certa(s) 'certain', indefinite
 adjective 5.6
cinema, 18.3.3
cities, omission of definite article 3.3.4
clarification *see* requesting
collective *see* nouns, numerals
com 'with', preposition 10.1
 with pronouns 5.1.5.2, 5.4.2(b)
comigo 'with me' 5.1.5.2
command 7.3(a)
como 'how; as'
 as adverb 7.3.5.1, 5.5.6(a), 8.1(i)
 as conjunction 5.1.2.2(c), 9.2.1, 9.2.6
como se 'as if', conjunction 9.2.6
comparative *see* adjectives, adverbs
Conditional 7.1, 7.2.8, 7.2.9, 7.3.3.1(c)
 with pronouns B5.1.2.3, 7.2.9.2,
 B7.12.1.2, 11.12.1
 replacing 7.2.3.1(f), 7.2.8.1(c)
conforme 'according to' preposition 10.1
congratulations 12.7
conjugation
 Conditional 7.2.8.2, 7.2.9.2
 Future 7.2.6.2, 7.2.7.2
 Future Perfect Subjunctive 7.3.6.2
 Future Subjunctive 7.3.5.2
 groups 7.1
 Imperative B7.4.1
 Imperfect 7.2.3.2
 Infinitive, Impersonal 7.5.1
 Infinitive, Personal 7.5.2
 Past Perfect Indicative 7.2.5.2
 Past Perfect Subjunctive 7.3.4.2
 Past Subjunctive 7.3.3.2
 Pluperfect 7.2.5.2
 Present Indicative 7.2.1.2
 Present Perfect Indicative 7.2.2.2
 Present Subjunctive 7.3.1.2
 Present Perfect Subjunctive 7.3.2.2
 Preterite 7.2.4.2
 reflexive verbs B7.12
 with vocalic change 7.13
conjunctions 5.1.2.2(c), 9
 co-ordinating 5.1.2.1(d), 9.1
 e with numerals 6.3
 subordinating 9.2
 position 9.1.4, 9.2.8
 with verbs 9.2.3, 9.2.4
consgo 'with you' 5.1.5.2
consoante 'according to', preposition 10.1
consonants B1.2
contigo 'with you' 5.1.5.2
continents 3.2.3
contra 'against', preposition 10.1
 with pronouns 5.4.2(b)
contraction
 of articles 3.4, 3.8
 of prepositions 3.4.1, 10.3
 of pronouns 5.1.4, 5.3.2, 5.3.3

- contudo** 'however, nevertheless',
conjunction 5.1.2.1(d), 9.1.2
correcting assumptions *see* assumptions
countries 3.2.3
- daquele(s), daquela(s)** 'of that/those' 5.3.2
dates B13.5.1
days of the week 2.1.2.1
- de** 'in, 's, of, from', preposition 10.1
contraction 3.4.1.1, 3.8.1.2, 5.3.2
with pronouns 5.1.5.1, 5.1.5.2, B5.2.1
- de . . . a** 'from . . . to' 11.5
defective *see* verbs
degree *see* adjectives, adverbs
- demasiado** 'too much, excessively', adverb
8.1(d), 8.3
- demonstratives *see* adjectives, pronouns
- depois** 'after', adverb 8.1(a)
- depois que** 'after', conjunction 9.2.5
describing *see* reporting
- desde** 'from', conjunction 10.1
- desde . . . até** 'from . . . to' 11.5
- desde que** 'provided that; since' 9.2.3,
9.2.5
- desire *see* enquiring about, expressing
- desse(s), dessa(s)** 'of that/those' 5.3.2
- deste(s), desta(s)** 'of this/these' 5.3.2
- diminutives B2.4
- diphthongs B1.3
nasal B1.3.2, 5.1.2.4(c)
oral 1.3.1, 5.1.2.4(a)
- direct speech *see* speech
- disagreement *see* enquiring about,
expressing
- disappointment *see* expressing
- disapproval *see* enquiring about,
expressing
- disinterest *see* enquiring about,
expressing
- dislike *see* enquiring about, expressing
- displeasure *see* enquiring about,
expressing
- dissatisfaction *see* enquiring about,
expressing
- disto** 'of this' 5.3.3
- donde** 'from where/which' 5.4.3
- doubt 7.3(c)
- durante** 'during', preposition 10.1
- e** 'and', conjunction 5.1.2.1(d), 9.1, 9.1.1
with numerals 6.3
- ele(s)/ela(s)** 'he, she/them'
as subject pronoun 5.1.1
as prepositional pronoun 5.1.5
- em** 'on, at, about, of, in', preposition
3.4.1.2, 10.1
contraction 3.8.1.1, 5.3.2
with pronouns 5.1.5.1, 5.1.5.2
- embora** 'although', conjunction 9.2.2
- enquanto** 'while', conjunction 7.3.5.1,
9.2.5
- enquiring about
agreement 15.1
approval 16.15
capability 16.20
desire 14.12
disagreement 15.1
disapproval 16.15
disinterest 16.4
dislike 16.3
displeasure 16.3
dissatisfaction 16.7
fear 16.9
incapability 16.20
intellectual attitudes B15
intention 14.12
interest 16.4
impossibility 15.4
knowledge 15.2
liking 16.3
logical conclusion 15.5
memory 15.3
need 14.11
obligation 14.9
pleasure 16.3
possibility 15.4
preference 16.10
satisfaction 16.7
someone 15.2
something 15.2
want 14.12
worry 16.9
- entre** 'between, among(st)', preposition
10.1
with pronouns 5.4.2(b)
- esse(s), essa(s)** 'that, those', demonstrative
5.3
- estar** 'to be' 11.13
- este(s), esta(s)** 'this, these', demonstrative
5.3
- eu** 'I', subject pronoun 5.1.1
- evaluation B16
- exchanging information 13
- excepto** 'except(ing)', preposition 10.1
with pronouns 5.4.2(b)
- excepto se** 'unless', conjunction 9.2.3
- expressing
agreement 15.1
appreciation 16.16
approval 16.15
capability 16.20
command 7.3(c)
desire 14.12
disagreement 15.1
disappointment 16.8
disapproval 16.15
disinterest 16.4
dislike 16.2

- displeasure 16.2
 dissatisfaction 16.7
 doubt 7.3(e)
 fear 16.9
 feeling 7.3(b)
 gratitude 16.11
 happiness 16.13
 hope 16.6
 incapability 16.20
 incomprehension B15.6
 indifference 16.18
 intellectual attitudes 15
 intention 14.12
 interest 16.4
 liking 16.1
 need 7.3(f), 14.11
 pleasure 16.1
 preference 16.10
 regret 16.17
 satisfaction 16.7
 surprise B16.5
 sympathy 16.12
 uncertainty 7.3(e)
 unhappiness 16.13
 want 14.12
 wish 7.3(a)
 worry 16.9
- family forms of address B12.10.5
 farewell B12.2, 12.3
 fear *see* enquiring about, expressing
 feeling 7.3(b)
 feminine
 forming 2.2
 of adjectives 4.1
 of nouns 2.1.2, 2.1.4
 Future
 Indicative 7.1, 7.2.6, 7.2.7
 with pronouns 5.1.2.3, 7.2.9.2,
 B7.12.1.3, 11.12.1
 replacing 7.2.6.1 note
 Subjunctive 7.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7.5.2
 note
- gender
 agreement 4.4.1, 7.9
 of nouns 2.1, 2.2
 of adjectives 4.1
gente 'people' B11.1
a gente 'us' B11.1
 giving permission *see* permission
 gratitude *see* expressing
 greetings 12.1, 12.2, 12.3, 12.5, 12.6,
 12.11
- happiness *see* expressing
 health 12.11
 help 12.4.3
 hope *see* expressing
- identifying
 people 13.1
 places 12.12.1
 things 13.2
 Imperative 7.1, B7.4, 7.13 *see also*
 requesting action
 Imperfect 7.1, 7.2.3, 7.3.3.1(a), 7.3.3.1(c)
 in reported speech *see* speech
 impersonal verbs *see* verbs
 impossibility *see* enquiring about, stating
 incapability *see* enquiring about,
 expressing
 incomprehension *see* expressing
 Indicative 7.1, 7.2
 with vocalic change 7.13
 indifference *see* expressing
 Infinitive 7.1, 7.5
 compound 7.7
 with conjunctions 9.2.3
 Impersonal 7.5.1
 Personal 7.5.2
 of reflexive verbs 7.12.2
 use of *see* impossibility, possibility
 information
 asking for B13.3
 exchanging B13
 instructing 14.7
 intention *see* enquiring about,
 expressing
 interest *see* enquiring about,
 expressing
 interrogatives 5.1.2.2(b), 5.5
 with **é que** 5.5.5
 word order 7.12.1
 introductions 12.9
 inviting a course of action 14.4
 islands 3.2.3
isso 'that', demonstrative 5.3.1
isto 'that', demonstrative 5.3.1
- já** 'already', adverb 8.1(a), 11.9
jamais 'never ever', adverb 5.1.2.2(a),
 8.1(f), 11.8
 judgement B16
 juxtaposition 2.5.1.1
- knowledge *see* enquiring about, stating
- lá** 'over there', adverb 8.1
 lakes 2.1.1.1
 leave-taking B12.2, 12.3
 letters 2.1.1.1
 letter writing B13.5
 closing formulas 12.2.1.1 note 1
 dates B13.5.1
 opening formulas B13.5.2
lhe(s) 'to him/her/them', pronoun indirect
 object 5.1.3
 liking *see* enquiring about, expressing

- literature, 18.3.1
 locations 12.12
 logical conclusion *see* enquiring about stating
logo ‘therefore, so’, conjunction 9.1.4
logo que ‘as soon as’ 7.3.5.1, 7.3.6.1, 9.2.5
- mais** ‘more’, adverb 8.5.1
mais ... (do) que ‘more ... than’
 with adjectives 4.3.1
 with adverbs 8.5.1
o(s)/as mais ... de/que ‘the most ... in/that’ 4.3.2.1
- mal** ‘badly; as soon as, hardly’
 as adverb 8.1(c), 8.5.1
 as conjunction 9.2.5
- mas** ‘but’, conjunction 5.1.2.1(d), 9.1, 9.1.2
- masculine
 of adjectives 4.1.1, 4.1.2
 of nouns 2.1.1, 2.1.3
- me** ‘me’, pronoun
 as indirect object 5.1.3
 as direct object 5.1.2
 as reflexive 5.1.6
- melhor** ‘better’
 as adjective 4.3.3
 as adverb 8.3, 8.5.1
- memory *see* enquiring about, stating
- menos** ‘less’, adverb 8.5.1
menos ... (do) que ‘less ... than’
 with adjectives 4.3.1
 with adverbs 8.5.1
- a menos que** ‘provided that’, conjunction 9.2.3
- o(s)/a(s) menos ... de/que** ‘the least ... in/that’ 4.3.2.1
- pelo menos** ‘at least’, adverb 8.3
- mesmo que** ‘even if/though’, conjunction 9.2.2
- meu(s), minha(s)** ‘my, mine’, possessive 5.2
- mim** ‘me’, prepositional pronoun 5.1.5
- modifiers 4.5.1.2, 5.1.2.2(d)
- mood 7.1
 Imperative 7.1, B7.4
 Indicative 7.1, 7.2
 Subjunctive 7.1, 7.3
- mountains 2.1.1.1
- muito** ‘much, very’, adverb 8.1(d), 8.3, 8.5.1
 with adjectives 4.3.1, 4.3.2.2.2, 4.5.1.2
 with pronouns 5.1.2.2(d)
- muito(s), muita(s)** ‘many’, pronoun or adjective 5.6
- music 18.3.2
- nada** ‘nothing’, pronoun 5.6
- não** ‘no, not’, adverb 5.1.2.2(a), 8.1(f), 11.8
- não só ... mas também** ‘not only ... but also’, conjunction 9.1.1
- narrating *see* reporting
- naquele(s), naquela(s)** ‘on/in/about that/those’ 5.3.2
- necessity 7.3(d)
- need 7.3(f), 14.11
- negative 11.8
 word order 5.1.2.2(a), B5.1.2.3, 5.1.3.2, 5.1.6.1, 7.12.1.1, 8.4.3, 11.8, 11.12.1(a)
- nem** ‘neither, nor’, adverb 5.1.2.2(a), 8.1(f)
- nem ... nem** ‘neither ... nor’, conjunction
 copulative 9.1.1
 disjunctive 9.1.3
- nem que** ‘not even if’, conjunction 9.2.2
- nenhum(ns)/a(s)** ‘none’, adjective or pronoun 5.1.2.2(a), 5.6
- neste(s), nesta(s)** ‘on/about this/these’ 5.3.2
- ninguém** ‘no one’, pronoun 5.1.2.2(a), 5.6
- nisso** ‘on/in/about that’ 5.3.3
- nos** ‘us’, pronoun
 as direct object 5.1.2
 as indirect object 5.1.3
 as reflexive B5.1.6
- nós** ‘we’, pronoun
 as subject 5.1.1
 as prepositional pronoun 5.1.5
- nosso(s), nossa(s)** ‘our, ours’, possessive 5.2
- nouns B2
 abstract 2.1.4
 agglutination 2.5.1.2
 collective 2.6
 compound 2.5
 concrete 2.1.3
 gender 2.1, 2.2
 juxtaposition of 2.5.1.1
 number 2.3
 number
 agreement 4.4.1, 7.9
 of adjectives 4.2
 of nouns 2.3
- numerals B6
 cardinal 2.1.1.1, B6.1
 collective 6.2
 multiplicative B6.1
 ordinal 2.1.1.1, B6.1
 Roman 6.4
- nunca** ‘never’, adverb 5.1.2.2(a), 8.1(f), 11.8
- nunca mais** ‘never again’ 8.3

- o(s) 'the; him, it, them'
 as definite article 3.1, 3.2
 as pronoun 5.1.2
- obligation *see* enquiring about, stating
- occupation 13.1.4
- oceans 2.1.1.1
- offering to do something 14.2
- onde** 'where, in which'
 as adverb 8.1(b)
 as pronoun 5.4.3
- onde?** 'where?' 5.1.2.2(b), 5.5.6(b), 8.1(i)
 origin 12.12.3
- ou, ou . . . ou** 'or, either . . . or',
 conjunction 9.1.3
- ownership 13.1.3
- para** 'for, to', preposition 7.5.3, 10.1,
 11.3, B11.4
 with pronouns 5.1.5.1, 5.4.2(b)
- para que** 'for, in order to', conjunction
 7.5.4, 9.2.4
- Participle
 Past 7.1, 7.8
 Present 7.1, B7.6, 7.7
- Passive Voice 7.9
- Past
 Indicative mood 7.1, 7.2.3, 7.2.4, 7.2.5
 Participle 7.1, 7.8, 7.9
 reported speech *see* speech
 Subjunctive mood 7.1, 7.3.3
- perante** 'before', preposition 10.1
 with pronouns 5.4.2(b)
- Perfect tenses
 Indicative mood 7.1, 7.2.2, 7.2.7, 7.2.9
 Past 7.2.5
 Present 7.2.2
 Subjunctive mood 7.1, 7.3.2, 7.3.6
- permission (seeking, giving, refusing)
 14.10
- pior** 'worse'
 as adjective 4.3.3
 as adverb 8.3, 8.5.1
- places 12.12
- pleasure *see* enquiring about, expressing
- Pluperfect 7.1, 7.2.5
- plural
 of adjectives 4.2
 of compound nouns 2.5.2
 of nouns 2.3
- pois** 'because', conjunction 9.2.1
- por** 'for; along, through; by', preposition
 10.1, 11.3
 contraction 3.4.1.4
 with pronouns 5.1.5.1, 5.4.2(b)
 with Passive Voice 7.9
- porém** 'however', conjunction 5.1.2.1(d),
 9.1.2
- porque** 'because', conjunction 9.2.1
- porquê?** 'why?', adverb 5.5.6(c), 8.1(i)
- portanto** 'therefore, so', conjunction
 9.1.4
- Portuguese language
 cultural language 18.3
 international language 18.1
 official language 18.1.1
 origins 18.2
 variants 18.1.2
- position
 of adjectives 4.5
 of adverbs 8.4
 of conjunctions 9.2.8
 of pronouns 5.1.2.1, 5.1.2.2, 5.1.2.3,
 5.1.3.1, 5.1.3.2, 5.6 notes 1–2,
 7.2.9.2, B7.12, 11.12.1
- possibility *see* enquiring about, stating
- pouco** 'little, hardly', adverb 4.5.1.2,
 5.1.2.2(d), 8.1(d), 8.3, 8.5.1
- pouco(s), pouca(s)** 'few' adjective or
 pronoun 5.6
- preference *see* enquiring about, expressing
- prepositions 4.3.1, B10, 10.1
 contraction of 3.4, 3.8.1, 5.3.2, 5.3.3,
 10.3
 following verbs B10.4
 with means of transport 11.11
- prepositional phrases 10.2
 with pronouns 5.1.5.1, 5.1.5.2, 5.4.2(b)
 with time 11.10
- Present
 Indicative 7.1, 7.2.1
 Participle 7.1, B7.6
 Perfect 7.2.2
 Subjunctive 7.1, 7.3.1, 7.3.2, 7.13
 in direct speech *see* speech
- Preterite 7.2.4, 7.3.3.1(b)
 in direct speech *see* verbs
- professions 2.1.1, 2.1.2
- pronouns 5
 agreement of 5.2.3, 5.3.4, 5.4.4, 5.4.5,
 5.6 notes 1–2
 contraction of 5.1.4, 5.3.2, 5.3.3
 demonstrative 5.3
 direct object B5.1.2, 5.1.2.4
 indefinite 5.6
 indirect object B5.1.3
 interrogative 5.5
 neuter 5.3.1, 5.3.3
 omission B5.1.1.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1
 personal B5.1
 position of B5.1.2.1, 5.1.2.2, 5.1.2.3,
 5.1.3.1, 5.1.3.2, 5.1.4, 5.1.6.1,
 7.12.1, 11.12.1, 11.12.2, 11.12.3,
 11.12.6
 possessive 3.3.3, B5.2, B5.2.2
 prepositional B5.1.5
 with prepositions 5.1.5, 5.3.2, 5.3.3,
 5.4.2(b)
 relative 5.4

- reflexive B5.1.6, 7.12.1
 subject B5.1.1
 pronunciation B1
 próximo 'next' 11.6
- qual, quais** 'who, whom, which, that',
 pronoun 5.4.4
qual?, **quais?** 'which?' 5.1.2.2(b), 5.5.3
quando 'when', conjunction 7.3.5.1,
 7.3.6.1, 9.2.5
quando? 'when?' 5.1.2.2(b)
quanto 'how much', adverb 8.1(d)
quanto(s), quanta(s) 'all that/who',
 pronoun 5.4.6
quanto(s)?, quanta(s)? 'how many?' 5.5.4
quase 'almost', adverb 8.1(d)
que 'than; that; whom, which, that, the
 one that/who'
 in comparatives 4.3.1
 as conjunction 5.1.2.2(c), 9.2.1, 9.2.6
 as pronoun 5.4.1
que? 'what?, which?' 5.5.1
que nem 'as' conjunction 9.2.6
... do que '... than', conjunction 9.2.6
quem 'who, whom, those', pronoun 5.4.2
quem? 'who?' 5.1.2.2(b), 5.5.2
quer ... quer 'whether ... or',
 conjunction 9.1.3
- reflexive verbs 7.12
 refusing *see* permission
 regret *see* expressing
 relative clauses 5.1.6.1
 remembering 15.3
 reporting 13.4 *see also* letter writing
 reported speech *see* speech
 requesting
 action 14.3
 assistance B14.8
 clarification B15.6
 residence 12.12.4
 rivers 2.1.1.1, 3.2.3
- salvo** 'excepting', preposition with
 pronouns 5.4.2(b)
salvo se 'unless', conjunction 9.2.3
 satisfaction *see* enquiring about,
 expressing
 sciences 2.1.2.1
se 'if; oneself, themselves'
 as conjunction 7.3.5.1, 7.3.6.1, 9.2.3,
 9.2.8
 as pronoun B5.1.6, 5.1.6.2
 seas 2.1.1.1
 seasons 2.1.1.1
 seeking permission *see* permission
seguinte 'following' 11.6
segundo 'according to', preposition with
 pronouns 5.4.2(b)
- sem** 'without', preposition 10.1
sem dúvida 'doubtlessly', adverb 8.3
sem que 'without', conjunction 7.5.4
sempre 'always', adverb 5.1.2.2(d), 8.1(a)
sempre que 'whenever', conjunction 9.2.5
ser 'to be' 11.13
senhor(es)/a(s) 'you'
 as subject pronoun 5.1.1
 as prepositional pronoun 5.1.5
seu(s), sua(s) 'his, hers, theirs', possessive
 5.2
si 'you', prepositional pronoun 5.1.5
sim 'yes', adverb 8.1(g)
só 'only', adverb 8.1(h)
sob 'under', preposition 10.1
 with pronouns 5.4.2(b)
sobre 'on, about, over', preposition 10.1
 with pronouns 5.1.5.1, 5.4.2(b)
 socializing B12
somente 'only', adverb 8.1(h)
- speech
 direct 13.4.1, 13.4.1.1
 reported 13.4.1.1
 spelling B1
 stating
 certainty 15.7
 impossibility 15.4
 knowledge 15.2
 logical conclusion 15.5
 memory 15.3
 obligation 14.9
 possibility 15.4
 uncertainty 15.7
 Subjunctive 7.3
 with conjunctions 9.2.3, 9.2.4
 in direct speech *see* speech
 replacing 7.5.4
 use of *see* advice, hope, impossibility,
 instructing, requesting, offering (to
 do), possibility, warning
 vocalic change 7.13
- suffixes
 with adjectives 4.3.2.2
 with adverbs 8.2
 augmentative 2.4.4
 diminutive 2.4.2, 2.4.3
 suggesting a course of action 14.1
 stress 1.4
 superlative
 absolute 4.3.2.2
 of adjectives 4.3.2
 of adverbs 8.5.2
 special forms B4.3.3
 surprise *see* expressing
 sympathy *see* expressing
- tal, tais** 'such', indefinite pronoun 5.6
tal que 'in such a way that', conjunction
 9.2.7

- de tal maneira/modo que** ‘in such a way that’ 9.2.7
- talvez** ‘perhaps’, adverb 5.1.2.2(d), 8.1(e)
- também** ‘also’, adverb 5.1.2.2(d)
- tanto** ‘so much’, adverb 11.7
- tanto . . . como** ‘both . . . and’, conjunction 9.1.1
- tanto quanto** ‘as much/far as’, conjunction 9.2.6
- tanto que** ‘in such a way that’, conjunction 9.2.7
- tão** ‘so’ 11.7
- tão . . . como** ‘as . . . as’
with adjectives 4.3.1
with adverbs 8.5.1
- te** ‘you; to you; yourself’, pronoun
as direct object 5.1.2
as indirect object 5.1.3
as reflexive B5.1.6
- teu(s), tua(s)** ‘your, yours’, possessive 5.2
- tí** ‘you’, prepositional pronoun 5.1.5
- time 13.3.1, 13.3.2
- titles B12.10.4
- todavia** ‘nevertheless, yet’, conjunction 5.1.2.1(d), 9.1.2
- todo(s), toda(s)** ‘all, the whole of’, adverb or pronoun 5.1.2.2(d), 5.1.2.2(e), 11.2
- towns 3.3.4
- tu** ‘you’, subject pronoun 5.1.1
- tudo** ‘everything’, adjective or pronoun 5.1.2.2(d), 5.4.6, 5.6, 11.2
- um(ns)/uma(s)** ‘a(n), some’ indefinite article 3.5, 3.6
‘a pair, about, such’ 3.6.4
contraction 3.8
- um ao outro** ‘one another’ 7.12.1.4
- uncertainty *see* expressing, *see also* stating
- unhappiness *see* expressing
- unipersonal *see* verbs
- vário(s), vária(s)** ‘various’, indefinite pronoun 5.6
- verbs B7
auxiliary 7.10
conjugation groups 7.1
with conjunctions 9.2.3, 9.2.4
consonant change 7.2.1.2
defective 7.11
Future tenses 7.2.6, 7.2.7, 7.2.8, 7.2.9, 7.3.5, 7.3.6
- Indicative 7.1, 7.2
- Imperative 7.4
- impersonal 7.11
- Infinitive 7.5
- mood 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, B7.4
- Participle 7.6, 7.7, 7.8
- Passive voice 7.9
- Past tenses 7.2.3, 7.2.4, 7.2.5, 7.3.3, 7.3.4
- Perfect tenses 7.2.2, 7.2.5, 7.3.2, 7.3.4
- Present tenses 7.1, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.3.2
- reflexive B7.12
- in reported speech *see* speech
- Subjunctive 7.3
- tense 7.1
- unipersonal 7.11
- with vocalic change 7.13
- with preposition B10.4
- visto que** ‘seeing that’, conjunction 9.2.1
- você(s)** ‘you’
as subject pronoun 5.1.1
as prepositional pronoun 5.1.5
- vos** ‘you; to you’, pronoun
as direct object 5.1.2
as indirect object B5.1.3
as reflexive B5.1.6
- vós** ‘you’
as subject pronoun 5.1.1
as prepositional pronoun 5.1.5
- vosso(s), vossa(s)** ‘your, yours’, possessive B5.2
- vowels B1.1
nasal 1.1.2
oral B1.1.1
- want *see* enquiring about, expressing
- warning 12.4.2, 14.6
- weather B12.13
- welcome 12.1.2
- ‘whatever’ 7.3.5.1
- ‘whenever’ 7.3.5.1
- ‘wherever’ 7.3.5.1
- ‘whoever’ 7.3.5.1
- wines 2.1.1.1
- wishes (good) 12.8
- wishing 7.3(a)
- word order B11.12, B13.3, 13.4.1, B14.8
see position: of adjectives, of adverbs, of conjunctions, of pronouns; *see also* negative *and* speech
- worry *see* enquiring, expressing